



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.16
C 469
21 Jun 07

NAVMC 3500.16

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL, (SHORT
TITLE: LAR T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A
(b) MCO 1553.3A
(c) MCO 3400.3F
(d) MCO 3500.27B W/Erratum
(e) MCRP 3-0A
(f) MCRP 3-0B
(g) MCO 1553.2A

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this T&R Manual establishes Core Capability Mission Essential Tasks (MET) for readiness reporting and required events standardization training of Marines and Navy personnel assigned to the Marine Corps Light Armor Reconnaissance Battalion. Additionally, it provides tasking for formal schools preparing personnel for service in the Marine Corps Light Armor Reconnaissance battalion. This NAVMC supersedes MCO 3501.30.

2. Scope

a. The Core Capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) in this manual is used in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) by all Light Armor Reconnaissance battalions for the assessment and reporting of unit readiness. Units achieve training readiness for reporting in DRRS by gaining and sustaining proficiency in the training events in this manual at both collective (unit) and individual levels.

b. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute each MET, and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency in each MET. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps, and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines. Commanders will use reference (c) to incorporate nuclear, biological, and chemical defense training into training plans and reference (d) to integrate operational risk management. References (e) and (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

c. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (g) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual, and provide career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

3. Information. CG, TECOM will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders, and to ensure a current Core Capabilities METL is available for use in DRRS by the Marine Corps Light Armor Reconnaissance battalion. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: Commanding General, TECOM (Ground Training Branch C 469), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

4. Command. This Publication is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

5. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.


GEORGE J. FLYNN
By direction

Distribution: 10033195200

Copy to: 7000260 (2)
8145001 (1)

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL, (SHORT
TITLE: LAR T&R MANUAL)

Location: _____
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

LAR T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1 OVERVIEW

2 MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

3 COLLECTIVE TRAINING LIGHT ARMOR
RECONNAISSANCE BATTALION

4 COLLECTIVE TRAINING LIGHT ARMOR
RECONNAISSANCE COMPANY

5 COLLECTIVE TRAINING LIGHT ARMOR
RECONNAISSANCE PLATOON

6 COLLECTIVE TRAINING LIGHT ARMOR
RECONNAISSANCE SQUAD/SECTION & CREW

7 COLLECTIVE TRAINING LIGHT ARMOR
RECONNAISSANCE UNIT GUNNERY TABLES

8 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 0313 & 0303

9 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 0311, 0341,
0352 & 0369 (LAR SPECIFIC)

APPENDICES

A ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

B TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

C REFERENCES

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION.	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT.	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING.	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION.	1004	1-4
T&R EVENT CODING.	1005	1-4
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE.	1006	1-5
EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS	1007	1-6
CRP CALCULATION	1008	1-6
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION	1009	1-7
CBRNE TRAINING.	1010	1-9
NIGHT TRAINING.	1011	1-10
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)	1012	1-10
APPLICATION OF SIMULATION	1013	1-10
MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM	1014	1-11

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training, and assessing training readiness. Subject Matter Experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). T&R Manuals are built around these METLs and all events contained in T&R Manuals relate directly to this METL. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.

2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core capabilities METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major OPLAN/CONPLAN or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). Tactical

training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.

3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles, explained in reference (b), provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- Train as you fight
- Make commanders responsible for training
- Use standards-based training
- Use performance-oriented training
- Use mission-oriented training
- Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
- Train to sustain proficiency
- Train to challenge

3. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (a) through (g).

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation).

2. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. Whether it involves individual or collective training events, they must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or

before expiration of the designated sustainment interval. Performance of the training event, however, is not sufficient to ensure combat readiness. Leaders at all levels must evaluate the performance of their Marines and the unit as they complete training events, and only record successful accomplishment of training based upon the evaluation. The goal of evaluation is to ensure that correct methods are employed to achieve the desired standard, or the Marines understand how they need to improve in order to attain the standard. Leaders must determine whether credit for completing a training event is recorded if the standard was not achieved. While successful accomplishment is desired, debriefing of errors can result in successful learning that will allow ethical recording of training event completion. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

3. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1004. ORGANIZATION

1. T&R Manuals are organized in one of two methods: unit-based or community-based. Unit-based T&R Manuals are written to support a type of unit (Infantry, Artillery, Tanks, etc.) and contain both collective and individual training standards. Community-based are written to support an Occupational Field, a group of related Military Occupational Specialties (MOSs), or billets within an organization (EOD, NBC, Intel, etc.), and usually only contain individual training standards. T&R Manuals are comprised of chapters that contain unit METs, collective training standards (CTS), and individual training standards (ITS) for each MOS, billet, etc.

2. The Tank T&R Manual is a unit-based manual comprised of 10 chapters. Chapter 2 lists the Core Capability METs and their related Battalion and Company-level events. Chapters 3 through 8 contain collective events. Chapters 9 and 10 contain individual events.

1005. T&R EVENT CODING

1. T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has up-to a 4-4-4-digit identifier. The first up-to four digits are referred to as a "community" and represent the unit type or occupation (TANK, TOW, 1802, etc.). The second up-to four digits represent the functional or duty area (TAC, CMDC, GNNRY, etc.). The last four digits represent the level and sequence of the event.

2. The T&R levels are illustrated in Figure 1. An example of the T&R coding used in this Manual is shown in Figure 2.

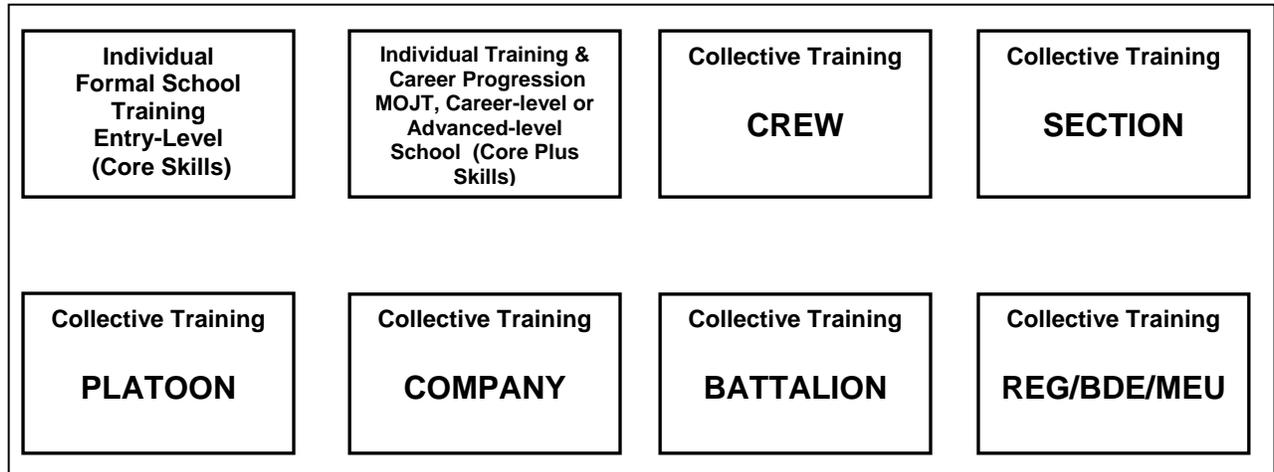


Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

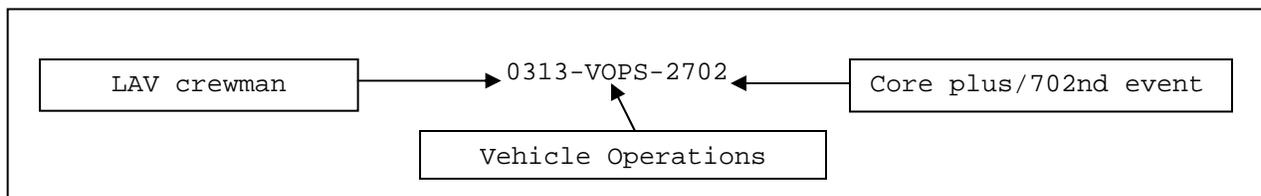


Figure 2: T&R Event Coding

1006. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage", as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. In unit-based T&R Manuals, unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

4. Individual combat readiness, in both unit-based and community-based T&R Manuals, is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events for his/her MOS and grade (or billet) that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.

1007. EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS

1. Unit-type T&R Manuals can contain numerous unit events, some for the whole unit and others for integral parts that serve as building blocks for training. To simplify training management and readiness assessment, only collective events that are critical components of a mission essential task (MET), or key indicators of a unit's readiness, are used to generate CRP for a MET. These critical or key events are designated in the T&R Manual as Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded) events. Formal evaluation of unit performance in these events is recommended because of their value in assessing combat readiness. Only E-Coded events are used to calculate CRP for each MET.

2. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training. This makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

1008. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000 level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. Using the battalion-based (unit) model, the battalion (7000-level) has collective events that directly support a MET on the METL. These collective events are E-Coded and the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has 4 E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP: $325 \text{ (total MET CRP)} / 5 \text{ (total number of METS)} = 65\%$

1009. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items are included in all events in each T&R manual.

a. Event Code (see Sect 1006). The event code is a 4-4-4 character set. For individual training events, the first 4 characters indicate the occupational function. The second 4 characters indicate functional area (TAC, CBTS, VOPS, etc.). The third 4 characters are simply a numerical designator for the event.

b. Event Title. The event title is the name of the event.

c. E-Coded. This is a "yes/no" category to indicate whether or not the event is E-Coded. If yes, the event contributes toward the CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-Coded event is based on number of E-Coded events for that MET. Refer to paragraph 1008 for detailed explanation of E-Coded events.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals are adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency.

f. Billet. Individual training events may contain a list of billets within the community that are responsible for performing that event. This ensures that the billet's expected tasks are clearly articulated and a Marine's readiness to perform in that billet is measured.

g. Grade. Each individual training event will list the rank(s) at which Marines are required to learn and sustain the training event.

h. Initial Training Setting. For Individual T&R Events only, this specifies the location for initial instruction of the training event in one of three categories (formal school, managed on-the-job training, distance

learning). Regardless of the specified Initial Training Setting, any T&R event may be introduced and evaluated during managed on-the-job training.

(1) "FORMAL" - When the Initial Training Setting of an event is identified as "FORMAL" (formal school), the appropriate formal school or training detachment is required to provide initial training in the event. Conversely, formal schools and training detachments are not authorized to provide training in events designated as Initial Training Setting "MOJT" or "DL." Since the duration of formal school training must be constrained to optimize Operating Forces' manning, this element provides the mechanism for Operating Forces' prioritization of training requirements for both entry-level (1000-level) and career-level (2000-level) T&R Events. For formal schools and training detachments, this element defines the requirements for content of courses.

(2) "DL" - Identifies the training event as a candidate for initial training via a Distance Learning product (correspondence course or MarineNet course).

(3) "MOJT" - Events specified for Managed On-the-Job Training are to be introduced to Marines, and evaluated, as part of training within a unit by supervisory personnel.

i. Event Description. Provide a description of the event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an action requiring learned skills and knowledge (e.g. Camouflage the M1A1 Tank).

j. Condition. Describe the condition(s), under which tasks are performed. Conditions are based on a "real world" operational environment. They indicate what is provided (equipment, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints, conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this is stated.

k. Standard. The standard indicates the basis for judging effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and is strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events is general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. While the standard for individual events specifically describe to what proficiency level in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is accomplished.

l. Event Components. Describe the actions composing the event and help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

m. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

n. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

o. Related Events. Provide a list of all Individual Training Standards that support the event.

p. References. The training references are utilized to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. References are also important to the development of detailed training plans.

q. Distance Learning Products (IMI, CBT, MCI, etc.). Include this component when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

r. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel
- Other Support Requirements

s. Miscellaneous. Provide any additional information that assists in the planning and execution of the event. Miscellaneous information may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

2. Community-based T&R manuals have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R manuals. These additions do not apply to this T&R Manual.

1010. CBRNE TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, and explosive incident defense (CBRNE), in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive CBRNE attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the

individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in a CBRNE environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an CBRNE environment, CBRNE training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under CBRNE conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1011. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every climate and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on individual, crew, and unit proficiency.

1012. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers will integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM is found in references (b) and (d).

1013. APPLICATION OF SIMULATION

1. Simulations/Simulators and other training devices shall be used when they are capable of effectively and economically supplementing training on the

identified training task. Particular emphasis shall be placed on simulators that provide training that might be limited by safety considerations or constraints on training space, time, or other resources. When deciding on simulation issues, the primary consideration shall be improving the quality of training and consequently the state of readiness. Potential savings in operating and support costs normally shall be an important secondary consideration.

2. Each training event contains information relating to the applicability of simulation. If simulator training applies to the event, then the applicable simulator(s) is/are listed in the "Simulation" section and the CRP for simulation training is given. This simulation training can either be used in place of live training, at the reduced CRP indicated; or can be used as a precursor training for the live event, i.e., weapons simulators, convoy trainers, observed fire trainers, etc. It is recommended that tasks be performed by simulation prior to being performed in a live-fire environment. However, in the case where simulation is used as a precursor for the live event, then the unit will receive credit for the live event CRP only. If a tactical situation develops that precludes performing the live event, the unit would then receive credit for the simulation CRP.

1014. MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for Ground T&R Program is to publish a T&R Manual for every readiness-reporting unit so that core capability METs are clearly defined with supporting collective training standards, and to publish community-based T&R Manuals for all occupational fields whose personnel augment other units to increase their combat and/or logistic capabilities. The vision for this program includes plans to provide a Marine Corps training management information system that enables tracking of unit and individual training accomplishments by unit commanders and small unit leaders, automatically computing CRP for both units and individual Marines based upon MOS and rank (or billet). Linkage of T&R Events to the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), through the core capability METs, has enabled objective assessment of training readiness in the DRRS.

2. DRRS measures and reports on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. With unit CRP based on the unit's training toward its METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to units' METLs.

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST . . .	2000	2-2

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST. The list below includes the core capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) with the Battalion and Company collective events that support each MET. All METS are derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL).

MET#/MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK

MET 1 - MCT 1.1 PROVIDE FORCES	
LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
LAR-MNVR-6106	Assist a passage of lines
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-OPS-6503	Establish and operate a command post
LAR-FSPT-6601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
MET 2 - MCT 1.3.2 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	
LAR-MNVR-7103	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MOBL-7109	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-DEF-7306	Conduct a withdrawal
LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-COMM-7504	Establish battalion command, control and communication nets
LAR-FSPT-7601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7603	Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area

LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
INF-AMPH-7901	Conduct amphibious staff planning
INF-AMPH-7902	Develop a landing plan
INF-AMPH-7903	Conduct an Amphibious Assault
LAR-MNVR-6104	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-6105	Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques
LAR-MOBL-6111	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-DEF-6306	Conduct a withdrawal
LAR-TAC-6401	Perform actions on contact
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
LAR-NBC-6606	Conduct MOPP gear exchange
INF-AMPH-6901	Prepare for combat operations
MET 3 - MCT 1.6.1 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
LAR-MNVR-7103	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-7104	Conduct a linkup
LAR-MNVR-7105	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-7106	Conduct a relief in place
LAR-MNVR-7107	Bypass an enemy/friendly position
LAR-MOBL-7108	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-7109	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-OFF-7201	Conduct a movement to contact
LAR-OFF-7202	Conduct a hasty attack
LAR-OFF-7203	Conduct a raid
LAR-OFF-7204	Conduct a breakout from an encirclement
LAR-DEF-7301	Occupy an assembly area
LAR-DEF-7302	Perform a guard
LAR-DEF-7303	Conduct a screen
LAR-DEF-7307	Fill a gap
LAR-INTL-7501	Process intelligence information
LAR-INTL-7502	Process detained persons
LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-COMM-7504	Establish battalion command, control and communication nets
LAR-FSPT-7601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7603	Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack

LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
LAR-MNVR-6103	Perform a route reconnaissance
LAR-MNVR-6104	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-6105	Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques
LAR-MNVR-6106	Assist a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-6107	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-6108	Conduct a relief in place
LAR-MOBL-6109	Conduct convoy security operations
LAR-MOBL-6110	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-6111	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-OFF-6201	Conduct a movement to contact
LAR-OFF-6202	Conduct a hasty attack
LAR-OFF-6203	Conduct a raid
LAR-OFF-6204	Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment
LAR-OFF-6205	Conduct a cordon and search
LAR-DEF-6301	Occupy an assembly area
LAR-TAC-6401	Perform actions on contact
LAR-INTL-6501	Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-OPS-6503	Establish and operate a command post
LAR-FSPT-6601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-6602	Conduct Fire Support Team (FiST) operations
LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
LAR-NBC-6606	Conduct MOPP gear exchange
LAR-LOG-6901	Conduct tactical logistics
MET 4 - MCT 1.6.4 CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
LAR-MNVR-7103	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-7104	Conduct a linkup
LAR-MNVR-7105	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-OFF-7204	Conduct a breakout from an encirclement
LAR-DEF-7301	Occupy an assembly area
LAR-DEF-7304	Defend
LAR-DEF-7305	Conduct a delay
LAR-DEF-7306	Conduct a withdrawal
LAR-DEF-7308	Conduct area security
LAR-INTL-7501	Process intelligence information
LAR-INTL-7502	Process detained persons

LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-COMM-7504	Establish battalion command, control and communication nets
LAR-FSPT-7601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7603	Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
INF-OFF-7119	Conduct a counterattack
LAR-MNVR-6106	Assist a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-6107	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-OFF-6204	Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment
LAR-OFF-6205	Conduct a cordon and search
LAR-DEF-6301	Occupy an assembly area
LAR-DEF-6303	Defend a battle position
LAR-DEF-6304	Defend in company sector
LAR-DEF-6305	Delay in company sector
LAR-DEF-6306	Conduct a withdrawal
LAR-DEF-6307	Conduct area security
LAR-TAC-6401	Perform actions on contact
LAR-INTL-6501	Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-OPS-6503	Establish and operate a command post
LAR-FSPT-6601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-6602	Conduct Fire Support Team (FiST) operations
LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
LAR-NBC-6606	Conduct MOPP gear exchange
LAR-LOG-6901	Conduct tactical logistics
MET 5 - MCT 1.6.6 CONDUCT MILITARY OPERATIONS OTHER THAN WAR (MOOTW)	
LAR-MNVR-7103	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-7104	Conduct a linkup
LAR-MNVR-7105	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-7106	Conduct a relief in place
LAR-MNVR-7107	Bypass an enemy/friendly position
LAR-MOBL-7108	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-7109	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-OFF-7201	Conduct a movement to contact

LAR-OFF-7202	Conduct a hasty attack
LAR-OFF-7203	Conduct a raid
LAR-OFF-7204	Conduct a breakout from an encirclement
LAR-DEF-7301	Occupy an assembly area
LAR-DEF-7302	Perform a guard
LAR-DEF-7303	Conduct a screen
LAR-DEF-7304	Defend
LAR-DEF-7308	Conduct area security
LAR-INTL-7501	Process intelligence information
LAR-INTL-7502	Process detained persons
LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-COMM-7504	Establish battalion command, control and communication nets
LAR-FSPT-7601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7603	Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
INF-INT-7401	Direct the intelligence effort
LAR-MNVR-6104	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-6105	Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques
LAR-MNVR-6106	Assist a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-6107	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-6108	Conduct a relief in place
LAR-MOBL-6109	Conduct convoy security operations
LAR-MOBL-6110	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-6111	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-OFF-6201	Conduct a movement to contact
LAR-OFF-6202	Conduct a hasty attack
LAR-OFF-6203	Conduct a raid
LAR-OFF-6204	Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment
LAR-OFF-6205	Conduct a cordon and search
LAR-DEF-6301	Occupy an assembly area
LAR-DEF-6303	Defend a battle position
LAR-DEF-6304	Defend in company sector
LAR-TAC-6401	Perform actions on contact
LAR-INTL-6501	Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-OPS-6503	Establish and operate a command post
LAR-FSPT-6601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-6602	Conduct Fire Support Team (FiST) operations

LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
LAR-NBC-6606	Conduct MOPP gear exchange
LAR-LOG-6901	Conduct tactical logistics
INF-MED-6403	Process casualties
INF-OOTW-6703	Conduct non-combatant evacuation operations (NEO)
INF-OOTW-6704	Conduct a tactical recovery of aircraft and personnel (TRAP)
MET 6 - MCT 2.2.1 CONDUCT TACTICAL RECONNAISSANCE	
LAR-MNVR-7101	Conduct zone reconnaissance
LAR-MNVR-7102	Conduct area reconnaissance
LAR-MNVR-7103	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-7105	Conduct a passage of lines
LAR-MNVR-7107	Bypass an enemy/friendly position
LAR-MOBL-7108	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-7109	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-INTL-7501	Process intelligence information
LAR-INTL-7502	Process detained persons
LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-COMM-7504	Establish battalion command, control and communication nets
LAR-FSPT-7601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7603	Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
LAR-MNVR-6101	Conduct zone reconnaissance
LAR-MNVR-6102	Conduct area reconnaissance
LAR-MNVR-6103	Perform a route reconnaissance
LAR-MNVR-6104	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-6105	Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques
LAR-MOBL-6110	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-6111	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-TAC-6401	Perform actions on contact
LAR-INTL-6501	Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-OPS-6503	Establish and operate a command post
LAR-FSPT-6601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-6602	Conduct Fire Support Team (FiST) operations

LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
LAR-NBC-6606	Conduct MOPP gear exchange
MET 7 - MCT 6.1.1.4 CONDUCT SECURITY OPERATIONS IN SUPPORT OF MANEUVER	
LAR-MNVR-7103	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-7107	Bypass an enemy/friendly position
LAR-MOBL-7108	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-7109	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-DEF-7302	Perform a guard
LAR-DEF-7303	Conduct a screen
LAR-INTL-7501	Process intelligence information
LAR-INTL-7502	Process detained persons
LAR-OPS-7503	Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development
LAR-COMM-7504	Establish battalion command, control and communication nets
LAR-FSPT-7601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-7602	Conduct fire support operations
LAR-FSPT-7603	Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures
LAR-FSPT-7604	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence
LAR-NBC-7605	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-7606	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-LOG-7901	Conduct combat logistics patrol
LAR-MNVR-6104	Conduct a tactical movement
LAR-MNVR-6105	Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques
LAR-MOBL-6110	Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle
LAR-MOBL-6111	Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing
LAR-DEF-6302	Conduct a screen
LAR-DEF-6307	Conduct area security
LAR-TAC-6401	Perform actions on contact
LAR-INTL-6501	Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment
LAR-OPS-6502	Prepare for combat operations
LAR-OPS-6503	Establish and operate a command post
LAR-FSPT-6601	Conduct fire support planning
LAR-FSPT-6602	Conduct Fire Support Team (FiST) operations
LAR-NBC-6603	React to a chemical/biological attack
LAR-NBC-6604	Cross a chemically contaminated area
LAR-NBC-6605	Conduct monitor survey operations
LAR-NBC-6606	Conduct MOPP gear exchange
LAR-LOG-6901	Conduct tactical logistics

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE BATTALION

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING	3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	3002	3-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	3003	3-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	3004	3-4
BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3005	3-5

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE BATTALION

3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion level Light Armor Reconnaissance unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies [Mission Essential Tasks (METs)] and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the focal point for Company and Platoon training, detailed in the subsequent chapters.

3001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "LAR" indicating that the event is for units in the Light Armor Reconnaissance Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion level are:

COMM - Communications	DEF - Defensive Operations
FSPT - Fire Support	INTL - Intelligence Operations
LOG - Logistics	MNVR - Maneuver
MOBL - Mobility	NBC - Nuclear, Biological & Chemical
OFF - Offensive Operations	OPS - Staff Functions

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which collective events under a MET will be E-coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, participates in, and conducts operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.
2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.
3. Participates in, and conducts a passage of lines, relief in place, and link up as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.
4. Prepares for and conducts Military Operations Other than War (MOOTW) missions.
5. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.
6. Supports another unit by fire.
7. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations in urban environments.
8. Participates in and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations, and security operations.
9. Constructs and breaches obstacles.
10. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations with mechanized and motorized forces.
11. Defends against air attack.
12. Processes enemy prisoners of war/detainees.
13. Employs inorganic assets to include AAVs, tanks and support aircraft.
14. Processes and evacuates casualties.
15. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts area and zone reconnaissance operations.
16. Prepares for, plans, and executes battalion level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, raid, defend, delay, screen, guard, ambush, disengage, withdrawal and consolidate.
17. Contributes to and conducts tactical and operational logistics planning.
18. Processes intelligence information.
19. Participates in and conducts fire support planning and execution.
20. Operates a battalion combat operation center.
21. Logistically sustain the battalion

3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
LAR-MNVR-7101	YES	Conduct zone reconnaissance	3-5
LAR-MNVR-7102	YES	Conduct area reconnaissance	3-5
LAR-MNVR-7103		Conduct a tactical movement	3-6
LAR-MNVR-7104		Conduct a linkup	3-7
LAR-MNVR-7105		Conduct a passage of lines	3-7
LAR-MNVR-7106		Conduct a relief in place	3-9
LAR-MNVR-7107		Bypass an enemy/friendly position	3-11
LAR-MOBL-7108		Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle	3-11
LAR-MOBL-7109		Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing	3-12
LAR-OFF-7201		Conduct a movement to contact	3-13
LAR-OFF-7202	YES	Conduct a hasty attack	3-14
LAR-OFF-7203	YES	Conduct a raid	3-14
LAR-OFF-7204		Conduct a breakout from an encirclement	3-15
LAR-DEF-7301		Occupy an assembly area	3-15
LAR-DEF-7302	YES	Perform a guard	3-16
LAR-DEF-7303	YES	Conduct a screen	3-18
LAR-DEF-7304	YES	Defend	3-19
LAR-DEF-7305	YES	Conduct a delay	3-20
LAR-DEF-7306	YES	Conduct a withdrawal	3-20
LAR-DEF-7307		Fill a gap	3-21
LAR-DEF-7308	YES	Conduct area security	3-21
LAR-INTL-7501	YES	Process intelligence information	3-23
LAR-INTL-7502		Process detained persons	3-23
LAR-OPS-7503		Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development	3-24
LAR-COMM-7504		Establish battalion command, control and communication nets	3-25
LAR-FSPT-7601		Conduct fire support planning	3-26
LAR-FSPT-7602	YES	Conduct fire support operations	3-27
LAR-FSPT-7603		Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures	3-29
LAR-FSPT-7604	YES	Employ targeting and targeting intelligence	3-30
LAR-NBC-7605		React to a chemical/biological attack	3-31
LAR-NBC-7606		Cross a chemically contaminated area	3-31
LAR-LOG-7901		Conduct combat logistics patrol	3-32
INF-AMPH-7901	YES	Conduct amphibious staff planning	3-34
INF-AMPH-7902	YES	Develop a landing plan	3-35
INF-AMPH-7903	YES	Conduct an amphibious assault	3-37
INF-OFF-7119	YES	Conduct a counterattack	3-38
INF-INT-7401	YES	Direct the intelligence effort	3-39

3005. BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

LAR-MNVR-7101: Conduct zone reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion has been ordered to conduct a zone reconnaissance. The specific zone to be reconnoitered, line of departure, limit of advance or objective, and the higher headquarters commander's intent are included in the operations order. Adequate time is available to gather the critical information needed by the higher headquarters.

STANDARD: Unless otherwise directed, the battalion must reconnoiter all terrain within the zone, inspect and evaluate all bridges, locate all fords/crossing sites near bridges, inspect and evaluate all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts; locate and clear all obstacles and contaminated areas (within the battalion's capability), and find and report all threat forces. The battalion must then report all gathered information NLT the time specified in the order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion conducts movement to the zone.
2. Battalion conducts a zone reconnaissance.
3. Battalion makes contact with the enemy and reports relevant information, and destroys enemy reconnaissance elements without becoming decisively engaged.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-6101

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task may be conducted to standard via simulation (tactical exercise without troops).

LAR-MNVR-7102: Conduct area reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. The specific area to be reconnoitered, line of departure, limit of advance or objective, and the higher headquarters commander's intent are included in the

order. Adequate time is available to gather the critical information needed by the higher headquarters.

STANDARD: Unless otherwise directed, the battalion must reconnoiter all terrain within the area, inspect and evaluate all bridges, locate all fords/crossing sites near bridges, inspect and evaluate all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts; locate and clear all obstacles and contaminated areas (within the battalion's capability), and find and report all threat forces. The battalion must then report all gathered information NLT the time specified in the order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion conducts movement to the area.
2. Battalion conducts an area reconnaissance.
3. Battalion makes contact with the enemy and reports relevant information, and destroys enemy reconnaissance elements without becoming decisively engaged.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-6102

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task may be conducted to standard via simulation (TEWT).

LAR-MNVR-7103: Conduct a tactical movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is ordered to move to a new location. Enemy contact is not expected. Start Point (SP) and Rally Point (RP) times are designated. The battalion is given a general avenue for the move and a general area for the new location and allowed to select the specific route(s) and location of the new area.

STANDARD: The battalion must meet the designated SP and RP times. Vehicles disabled during the move must be recovered. After the move is completed the battalion must be prepared for subsequent operations as directed in the higher headquarters' operations order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion performs route reconnaissance.
2. Battalion commander selects a road march technique.
3. S3 determines distance factors.
4. S3 determines movement rate factors.
5. S3 determines time factors.
6. Quarters party reconnoiters route, either emplaces road guards to control movement or marks route and secures the RP.
7. Battalion prepares for road march.
8. Battalion forms a column or staggered column.

9. The lead company reports to battalion CP as they pass SP.
10. Battalion S3 monitors unit movement.
11. Road guides control flow of vehicles.
12. Battalion maintenance elements perform recovery operations, as necessary.
13. Subordinate companies maintain air guards in accordance with unit SOP.
14. Battalion maintains communications.
15. Battalion clears RP.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-6104 LAR-MNVR-6105

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
-

LAR-MNVR-7104: Conduct a linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion is given an offensive operation order that requires a linkup with another battalion. The headquarters directing the linkup establishes boundaries, RFLs, zones of attack or axis of advance, general linkup point, chain of command upon linkup, and other control/coordination measures. The enemy is an MRC in a defensive position.

STANDARD: The battalion must perform the linkup at the time and place specified in the higher headquarters order. There must be no losses due to friendly fire. The chain of command must be established during the linkup. The battalion main body must not be surprised by the enemy.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion CP coordinates communications requirements.
2. Battalion initiates movement to contact.
3. Battalion reaches LOA.
4. Battalion achieves linkup at linkup points.
5. Liaison teams exchange critical information.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
-

LAR-MNVR-7105: Conduct a passage of lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: While performing tactical operations, the battalion is required to perform a passage of lines. The enemy is defending with a reinforced Motorized Rifle Company (MRC) for a forward passage or is attacking with a reinforced Motorized Rifle Battalion (MRB) for a rearward passage.

STANDARD: The battalion must execute the passage per the higher headquarters' order and not disrupt the stationary unit's mission. The battalion main body must not be surprised by the enemy. The battalion must not suffer any casualties as a result of fratricide. After the passage is completed, the battalion must be able to perform its assigned mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The unit establishes control and secures the AO far enough to its front so that the passing force can pass through and reform into a combat formation prior to contact with the enemy force.
2. The two units involved develop a passage plan.
3. Select routes and lanes that provide cover and concealment, do not disrupt defense, and provide for rapid movement.
4. Coordinate the exchange of intelligence and combat information.
5. Coordinate the current friendly dispositions and tactical plans, especially deception and obstacle plans.
6. Coordinate direct and indirect fires and close air support (CAS) plans.
7. Coordinate any necessary maneuver control measures and graphics not directed by the higher headquarters to include: boundary changes, battle handover line (BHL), emergency combat service support (CSS) points, assembly area(s) to be used, and firing positions for artillery, air defense, and other units.
8. Coordinate long-range and short-range recognition symbols and vehicle markings to reduce the probability of fratricide.
9. Coordinate provisions for movement control to include: contact points, start and release points, route selection (primary and alternate), priorities for using routes and facilities, passage points, and provision for guides.
10. Coordinate signal operating instruction (SOI) details such as call signs, frequencies, and recognition signals.
11. Coordinate operational security measures required before or during the passage.
12. Unit prepares for the passage and clears a lane through all obstacles from the assembly area (AA) or attack position (AP) through passage lanes, employ reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) assets to gather requested information for the passing unit, refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence, employ operational security measures to deny the enemy information, verify communications, supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent, conduct rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible, and position forces.
13. Unit conducts the passage.
14. Establish contact at contact points.
15. Pass element through unit positions with no halts.
16. Provide security of the LD of the forward passing unit until it is able to assume that responsibility.
17. Engage all enemy elements that can fire on passing unit.
18. Close all passage lanes when the passing unit has completed passage.
19. Report to higher headquarters upon completion of passage.

20. Unit supports by fire, engages and suppresses all enemy elements in line of sight by direct or indirect fires IAW passing unit's fire plan, responds to requests for supporting fires from passing elements, and avoids firing on friendly elements.
21. Unit continues operations as directed.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-6107 LAR-MNVR-6106

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
-

LAR-MNVR-7106: Conduct a relief in place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is directed to perform a relief in place with another battalion. It is to occupy the same sector. The relief is to be completed at night before daybreak. A directed time of passage of command is specified. The enemy is in Motorized Rifle Company (MRC) strength in hasty defensive positions or is a reinforced Motorized Rifle Battalion (MRB) attacking.

STANDARD: The relief must be completed per the higher headquarters operations order. The relieving force is prepared to defend and the relieved force is out of the sector at the specified time. There are no casualties as a result of friendly fire. The battalion must retain freedom of maneuver and offensive capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish communications with the relieved unit through an exchange of liaison personnel or an other means to exchange information pertinent to the relief operations.
2. Determine advance party reconnaissance and coordination tasks.
3. Determine technique to use for the relief and order in which subordinate forces are to move and conduct the relief.
4. Relieve units one at a time (this method is the most deliberate and time-consuming): relieve maneuver companies sequentially one at a time; label routes sequentially to correspond to the order in which the company executes them during the relief; move lead company (of the relieving unit) to its release point (RP), its platoons move to their designated positions; and move the next company (of the relieving unit) along its designated route to relieve its counterpart after the lead company is in position.
5. Relieve units at the same time after the two units' command posts (CPs) are collocated and plans exchanged (this method is the fastest but risks revealing friendly unit intentions): move along different routes (relieving and relieved units).

6. Relieve units by occupying in-depth and adjacent positions (this technique requires sufficient terrain to accommodate at the same time positioning of two like-sized units): position relieving unit so as to observe and provide protective direct and indirect fires for the relieved unit using the relieved units' fire plans; conduct a detailed physical reconnaissance of the defensive positions with their counterparts from the relieved unit (all commanders); and share gathered information from the reconnaissance throughout the relieving unit during the planning and TLP process.
7. Plan fire support to include: obscuration fires as required, deception fires to deceive the enemy as necessary, fires to support the reconnaissance effort, fires to delay or neutralize repositioning enemy forces and reserves, and locations of critical friendly zones (CFZ) to protect critical assets and prevent fratricide.
8. Coordinate to relieve forward observers and fire support teams (FiST).
9. Ensure confirmed OBSTINTEL receives immediate unit-wide dissemination, including supporting combat support (CS) and combat service support (CSS) units.
10. Coordinate with relieved unit to determine location of friendly mines, obstacles, and fortifications; determine location of prepared demolitions; obtain prepare target folders; and determine location of all known enemy mines, obstacles, or fortifications.
11. Plan combat service support (CSS): determine relief order of combat support (CS) elements, integrate the movement and positioning of CSS assets with the scheme of maneuver to ensure immediate support of anticipated requirements, ensure adequate CSS support to the R&S effort, plan and coordinate casualty evacuation, and plan transfer of excess supplies to the relieving unit.
12. Determine and confirm contact points.
13. Initiate movement, move to predetermined contact points and meet guides from the relieved unit, and move into hide positions and coordinate any final information.
14. Collocate the two unit's main CPs to form a single traffic control cell that coordinates all movement in and out of AO.
15. Establish traffic control points using scouts or guide traffic and prevent congestion.
16. Position forces to protect the relief.
17. Complete preparations and coordination with the relieving or relieved unit; update the enemy situation, transfer sector sketches and fire plans, and transfer obstacle target folders and hasty protective minefield forms.
18. Unit executes the plan.
19. Maintain OPSEC, change frequencies on all unit radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit, maintain radio listening silence, and adhere to noise, light, and litter discipline.
20. Conduct battle handover (BHO).
21. Relieving and relieved units keep main CPs collocated until completion of the relief and share battle tracking and reports.
22. If enemy attacks before completion of the relief, the incoming unit becomes under operational control (OPCON) to the relieved unit.
23. Incoming and outgoing commanders conduct passage of command.
24. Complete passage of command by the NLT time specified in the order.
25. Passage of command normally occurs when front line commanders have assumed responsibility for their respective AOs and the incoming commander has sufficient communications assets to control the operation.
26. Unit continues operations as directed.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-6108

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

LAR-MNVR-7107: Bypass an enemy/friendly position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Friendly: The battalion makes visual or radio contact with a unit blocking its movement. A passage of lines is not possible due to time constraints or terrain restrictions. The battalion commander request and receives permission to bypass the unit. The unit commander of the blocking unit is aware of the bypass. Enemy: The battalion makes contact with a company sized or smaller force that does not have to be contained or destroyed. The battalion's mission requires continued forward movement. The battalion commander requests and receives permission to bypass the unit.

STANDARD: Friendly: The battalion must bypass the unit without being canalized. The battalion must maintain visual contact with the bypassed unit. Reports must be submitted throughout the bypass. Enemy: The battalion must bypass the unit without being canalized or effectively engaged. The battalion must maintain visual contact with the bypassed unit. Reports must be submitted throughout the bypass.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Overwatch element moves to an overwatch position.
2. Overwatch element fixes the enemy, if necessary to facilitate movement of the bypass element through the bypass routes.
3. Bypass element assists disengagement of overwatch element.
4. Overwatch element disengages and moves through bypass routes on order.
5. Battalion continues original mission.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

LAR-MOBL-7108: Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion is ordered to breach a defended obstacle system to initiate the higher headquarters' penetration of an enemy defensive position.

The area of the breach is covered by an MRC. Supporting attacks fix, but do not suppress, adjacent MRCs. The terrain does not permit bypass or wide envelopment. The obstacle system has wire obstacles, antitank and antipersonnel mines and an antitank ditch. The battalion has priority of fires and has the combat engineers attached that are task organized as an obstacle clearing detachment.

STANDARD: The battalion must initiate the breach. The battalion moves through the obstacle system without losses due to fratricide or obstacles, NLT the time specified in the higher headquarters' order. The battalion sustains no losses as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion elements react to the enemy obstacle.
2. Battalion elements conduct mounted, dismounted, and aerial reconnaissance of the obstacle and surrounding area while the FSCC plans and employs supporting arms to support SOSR (Suppress, Obscure, Secure, Reduce).
3. Support forces move to an overwatch position.
4. Support force provides overwatch for breach force.
5. Breach force prepares to breach the obstacle.
6. Breach force neutralizes booby traps and anti-handling devices on obstacles.
7. Breach force creates lanes for the battalion.
8. Breach force marks breached lane for vehicles.
9. Battalion improves the breach site.
10. Commander supports information to higher headquarters.
11. Battalion continues mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MOBL-6110

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
2. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations

LAR-MOBL-7109: Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting offensive operations and must cross a river/gap. The enemy consists of a security force of reinforced Motorized Rifle Platoon (MRP) size. If a bridge(s) is located in the battalion's sector it may be intact but prepared for destruction.

STANDARD: All combat, CS, command group, and combat train elements of the battalion must cross the river/gap within the time specified in the higher headquarters' operation order. The battalion must not lose more than 20% of its vehicles/infantry during the crossing. The bridge(s) must be secured before the enemy can destroy them.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Reconnaissance teams conduct mounted and dismounted reconnaissance of water obstacle or gap and surrounding area.
2. Battalion moves through crossing site.
3. Battalion continues its mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MOBL-6111

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 4. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
-

LAR-OFF-7201: Conduct a movement to contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is ordered to conduct a movement to contact as part of a larger units' movement to contact or meeting engagement. Enemy contact with units of BN(+)/MRR(-) size is expected. The higher headquarters' operation order specifies the line of departure, the width of the zone or maneuver area, the limit of advance or objective, and the crossing time.

STANDARD: The battalion must cross the line of departure at the designated time, and gain or regain contact with the enemy, or reach the limit of advance or objective if no enemy contact is made. If threat forces are encountered the battalion must react to the contact, report the contact to its higher headquarters, develop the situation, and either attack the enemy force or recommend a course of action to higher headquarters if the enemy force is too large for the battalion to assault on its own.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion initiates movement to contact.
2. Battalion moves through restricted areas and choke points.
3. Battalion initiates actions on enemy contact.
4. Battalion reports contact to main body commander.
5. Battalion reaches the LOA or objective without encountering enemy forces.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-6201

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

LAR-OFF-7202: Conduct a hasty attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is performing a tactical movement and encounters an enemy force that is not completely deployed for battle or that is in hasty defensive positions. It may be an MRB(+) or an MRR in march formation, which is organized and reacts (an immediate attack from the march), or an MRC(+) in hasty defensive positions.

STANDARD: The battalion must respond to the encounter. A moving MRB(+)/MRR must be forced to deploy and attrite 25%. A defending MRC(+) must be destroyed (50%) or forced to withdraw. The battalion continues its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Companies in contact establish a hasty defense.
2. Companies in contact conduct additional reconnaissance of the enemy and the area of operation concurrently with battalion staff hasty planning.
3. Base-of-fire commander selects a firing position (if different from hasty defensive position).
4. Company in contact coordinates with assault force.
5. Base-of-fire element moves to firing position.
6. Base-of-fire element conducts an attack by fire to cover the assault.
7. On order, assault force conducts the assault.
8. Base-of-fire element joins assault force on the objective.
9. Battalion initiates consolidation and reorganization.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-6202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

LAR-OFF-7203: Conduct a raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion has been ordered to conduct a raid into enemy territory to collect information, create confusion, destroy material, and disrupt enemy plans. The objective is lightly defended. The higher headquarters' operation order specifies departure and return times and outlines the specific tasks to be accomplished. The raid may be conducted by the battalion only, by the battalion reinforced, or by a larger task organized force that includes the battalion.

STANDARD: The battalion must conduct the raid so that it accomplishes all assigned tasks while retaining freedom of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion prepares for the raid.
2. Battalion conducts reconnaissance of the area as situation allows.
3. Battalion moves to the objective and crosses the LD on time.
4. Battalion assaults objective.
5. Battalion withdraws from the objective.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-6203

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

LAR-OFF-7204: Conduct a breakout from an encirclement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion performs an offensive, defensive, or retrograde operation. During the operation, the battalion becomes encircled (enemy elements to the front, flanks, and rear). The enemy may be in a hasty defensive posture or it may be using forces to fix the battalion. The battalion is ordered to rejoin friendly elements. The enemy is an MRB(+)sized unit. Gaps between enemy elements do exist.

STANDARD: The battalion must break through or disengage from the enemy and rejoin friendly forces per directions from higher headquarters. All encircled friendly elements, regardless of the command relationship, should be brought under battalion control.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Companies conduct additional reconnaissance of the enemy and attack area.
 2. Battalion establishes a defense.
 3. Trains prepare to support breakout.
 4. Battalion employs deception measures to mask breakout preparations.
 5. Rupture force conducts a deliberate attack to achieve penetration.
 6. Reserve force passes through the gap and joins up with the rupture force.
 7. Main body moves through gap and into the center of wedge created by reserve and rupture forces.
 8. Battalion transitions into a movement to contact, and reports the breakout to higher headquarters.
-

LAR-DEF-7301: Occupy an assembly area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion is ordered to occupy an assembly area (AA) and prepare for future operations. Higher headquarters has specified latest time by which AA must be occupied and earliest time by which battalion must be prepared to depart the AA. The situation makes enemy contact possible but not likely, though the enemy is in the area conducting squad and platoon level patrols. The battalion is given a general area and allowed to select the exact location of the assembly area. Resupply and maintenance support are available.

STANDARD: The battalion must occupy the assembly area no later than the specified time. Elements occupy positions without halting, and are prepared to conduct future operations not later than the time specified. Elements conduct PCCs/PCIs in accordance with unit SOP. During the assembly area operation, 90% of fighting, CS, and CSS systems are brought to an operationally ready status. OPSEC must be maintained and enemy actions do not impede the battalion's preparations to the point that it cannot begin its follow-on mission. Within 24 hours the battalion replenishes all basic and combat loads, takes necessary actions to replenish Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricants (POL), and is as prepared for subsequent operations as is directed in the operation order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Subordinate units prepare quartering parties.
2. Quartering party moves to AA.
3. Quartering party clears tentative site and establishes security while a hasty reconnaissance is conducted, then the OIC passes appropriate reports.
4. Quartering party reconnoiters and secures the AA.
5. Quartering party prepares site by selecting and marking vehicle and unit positions, establishing security, marking or clearing obstacles, and positioning guides at the Release Point.
6. Battalion moves into AA based on unit order of march.
7. Battalion establishes security at all entrances and exits to control traffic flow, OPs to cover key terrain and likely areas of approach, and coordinates fire plans for all-round defense against attack.
8. Wire and messenger communications established within battalion elements, and to higher and adjacent headquarters.
9. Battalion elements report time AA was occupied.
10. Battalion prepares for future operations, completing required vehicle and weapons maintenance, resupply operations, and all preparations for combat required to depart the AA and assume mission.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-6301

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

LAR-DEF-7302: Perform a guard

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: HHQ has ordered the battalion to conduct an advance, flank or rear guard of a stationary or moving force. The battalion is reinforced with additional combat and combat support assets. The battalion has been given the trace of the guard and effective time, if appropriate. A reconnaissance of the area between the main body and the battalion has been conducted, the location and concept of the force to be protected, and HHQ commander's intent. The battalion is in place. Enemy reconnaissance elements are trying to locate the main body.

STANDARD: For a stationary guard: The battalion maintains continuous surveillance of enemy avenues of approach. It destroys, repels or fixes enemy ground forces before they can engage the protected force with direct fire. If conducting a rear guard or a moving flank guard, the battalion reconnoiters the zone between the protected force and the guard force BPs, and displaces to successive BPs along phase lines in depth as the main body moves. If conducting an advance guard, the battalion performs reconnaissance along the protected force's axis of advance. For both advance and rear guards, the battalion destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements and security forces within its capabilities, and maintains contact with and provides early warning to the protected force.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander to determine the general trace of the guard, effective time (if applicable), and area of responsibility for the guard force.
2. Coordination made to establish distance from the guard and protected forces, special constraints or restraints, and battle handover considerations.
3. Battalion commander and staff plan the guard mission, focusing on a defense in depth, limited visibility surveillance requirements, movement to initial security lines, and the positioning of command and control, combat support, and CSS assets.
4. If conducting a stationary guard, the battalion moves to initial guard positions, utilizing appropriate movement techniques that result in deployment of companies abreast with an appropriate reserve.
5. Battalion establishes the defense with companies oriented on assigned positions or sectors, with attached assets assigned either as the reserve or to a defensive sector.
6. Battalion defends or delays as necessary to protect the main body: defeats enemy reconnaissance elements; employs indirect fires whenever possible; continually updates the protected force on the enemy situation through spot reports.
7. Battalion performs required actions, if it encounters enemy forces that are beyond its capability.
8. Battalion continues to defend while it conducts rearward passage and battle handover with the protected force.
9. Upon completion of battle handover, battalion moves to an assembly area or sector to execute follow-on missions.
10. Lead company reconnoiters the zone between the protected force and battalion route of advance.
11. If conducting a moving flank guard, the battalion deploys into the guard sector by either crossing the line of departure with the protected force, or separate from the protected force, depending on whether the force is in

- contact with the enemy, or preparing the cross the line of departure itself.
12. Battalion regulates movement along the route of advance used in accordance with the pace of the protected force, the distance to the objective, and the enemy situation.
 13. The remainder of the battalion moves along the route of advance and occupies battle positions as they are reached.
 14. Battalion conducts continuous surveillance throughout and performs required actions if it encounters enemy forces that are beyond its capability, while providing the protected force reaction time to maneuver combat power against the enemy.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event may be conducted to standard via simulation.

LAR-DEF-7303: Conduct a screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion has received an operation order to screen in front of, or on the flanks of, a larger friendly unit. The battalion may be reinforced with additional combat and combat service support units. The unit may be moving or stationary. The enemy is attempting to gain intelligence about the friendly unit and disrupt its operations.

STANDARD: For a moving flank screen, the battalion performs the screen along the protected force's flanks. It moves the screen line to keep pace with the protected force and remain equidistant from it. The battalion maintains continuous surveillance of enemy avenues of approach and destroys or repels enemy elements within its capabilities. The battalion must detect all enemy platoon-sized or larger units in its assigned area and warn the higher headquarters before the enemy can attack or before the unit moves within range of the enemy's direct fire weapons systems if moving. The battalion must destroy enemy reconnaissance elements or force their withdrawal before they can provide information to their higher headquarters. The battalion uses supporting arms to defeat the enemy and uses direct fire only in self defense. The battalion retains freedom of maneuver and offensive capability throughout.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion commander and staff coordinate with the protected force commander to coordinate the general trace of the screen and effective time, area(s) of responsibility, interval to be maintained between the battalion and protected force, and any applicable rear boundaries.
2. Battalion commander and staff plan the screen mission, incorporating fire support, the positioning of C2, combat support, and combat service support, as well as a plan to satisfy limited visibility requirements.
3. Battalion moves to the initial screen line, using the appropriate movement techniques.

4. Companies establish the assigned screen lines and battalion ensures contact is maintained with the protected force.
5. Companies maintain continuous surveillance and orient of enemy avenues of approach.
6. If conducting a flank screen, the companies move the screen lines in conjunction with the movement of the protected force.
7. The battalion provides early warning to the main body by impeding and harassing the enemy with indirect fires, defeating enemy reconnaissance forces, and updating the protected force on the enemy situation through spot reports.
8. If conducting a stationary screen, the battalion withdraws to subsequent screen lines, in accordance with commander's intent, and maintains contact during displacements.
9. Battalion conducts battle handover to the protected force and rearward passage of lines upon direction of the higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-6302

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

LAR-DEF-7304: Defend

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion has been ordered to defend in sector or defend by battle position, or a combination of both. A covering force forward of the battalion gives the battalion early warning and time to conduct defensive preparations. The covering force withdraws. The enemy Motorized Rifle Regiment (MRR) performs reconnaissance, breaching, and infiltration in preparation for the attack. The enemy attacks.

STANDARD: The battalion is prepared to defend at the prescribed time. The enemy is defeated forward of the battalion's boundary. The battalion retains flank security and conducts the defense in accordance with HHQ's intent and unit SOPs.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion moves to defensive position or sector.
2. Battalion prepares the defense.
3. Battalion defeats enemy reconnaissance and infiltration.
4. Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
5. Battalion defeats the attack.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-6304

LAR-DEF-6303

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

LAR-DEF-7305: Conduct a delay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is given the mission to delay in sector or forward of a specified line for a specified time or event. The commander's intent is to obtain a maximum delay of the enemy while maintaining freedom of maneuver.

STANDARD: The delay is conducted so that the battalion is prepared to delay at the specified time. The battalion preserves its freedom to maneuver so that it does not become decisively engaged and inflicts maximum delay and destruction on the enemy. The battalion must maintain contact with the enemy. The battalion must not be bypassed or penetrated by more than a platoon sized element. The battalion must sustain losses of no more than 30% of its personnel or combat vehicles.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion moves to and occupies defensive sector.
2. Battalion prepares for the delay.
3. Battalion defeats enemy reconnaissance and infiltration.
4. Battalion maintains continuous surveillance.
5. Battalion delays the enemy advance.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-6305

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

LAR-DEF-7306: Conduct a withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion is in either a deliberate or hasty defense and is in contact with the enemy. The enemy is attacking with a reinforced Motorized Rifle Regiment (MRR). The battalion is authorized to withdraw. Another unit is positioned to cover the withdrawal (assisted); the battalion is ordered to occupy new defensive positions in depth without a covering force(unassisted) or the battalion is authorized to perform a defense in sector. The battalion commander's concept is to shift the defense rearward.

STANDARD: The battalion must perform the withdrawal and reach its designated position NLT the time specified in the higher headquarters order. The battalion must not allow penetration. After completion of the withdrawal, the battalion must be ready to assume its new mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion prepares for the withdrawal.
2. Battalion conducts battle handover to security forces.
3. Battalion activates security forces (unassisted withdrawal).
4. Battalion disengages from the enemy.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-6306

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

LAR-DEF-7307: Fill a gap

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Enemy tactical operations, NBC, or intense conventional fire strikes have created gaps between subordinate battalions of a regiment, or between regiments. The position/terrain must be held. Enemy contact is probable. Higher headquarters has ordered the battalion to fill the gap or one of the gaps. The battalion has conducted a tactical road march and coordinated with higher headquarters to rapidly clear the area. The higher headquarters' order specifies the line of departure as the area where the gap appears to begin, the limit of advance along the forward line of troops, and the time by which the mission must be completed.

STANDARD: The battalion must fill the gap by establishing contact with friendly units on both sides of the gap, without causing/incurred any casualties as a result of fratricide. The battalion must also locate and gain control of isolated units/personnel within the gap.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion moves to the gap areas.
2. Battalion reconnoiters area and locates friendly units.
3. Battalion or company restores communication links to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

LAR-DEF-7308: Conduct area security

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion is given a mission to neutralize or defeat enemy operations in a specified area delineated by higher headquarters to deny the

enemy the ability to influence friendly actions in a specific area or deny the enemy the use of the area for his own purposes. Purpose and intent for the operation must be given by higher headquarters. The unit may be reinforced with additional assets (translators, counter-intel assets, engineers, civil affairs, etc.)

STANDARD: The battalion denies the enemy the ability to influence friendly actions in a specific area and/or denies the enemy the use of the area for his own purposes. Purpose and intent for the operation are accomplished and the battalion maintains the initiative over the enemy. The battalion maintains a quick reaction force and reserve. The commander understands and is aware of his relationship with local authorities and the civilian population to insure the safety of all civilian and host nation government personnel. Commander ensures that command for the specified area is clearly defined, particularly in relation to other service components and multi-national forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The commander receives the mission to provide security for an area, clearly delineated by specific boundaries, and insures that command for the specified area is clearly defined, particularly in relation to other service components and multi-national forces.
2. The battalion special staff conduct the planning process and develops a supportable course of action, issues the order, and supervises rehearsals. The application of kinetic and non-kinetic fires is analyzed to ensure a synergistic effect is obtained.
3. The battalion moves into the area and screens, reconnoiters and conducts counter-reconnaissance, attacks, defends, and delays as necessary to accomplish the mission and achieve higher headquarters purpose and intent.
4. The battalion employs all available assets and appropriate combination of techniques to include patrols, vehicle checkpoints, cordon operations, and combined operations with host nation forces where the situation permits to deny the enemy the ability to influence friendly actions in a specific area or deny the enemy the use of the area for his own purposes.
5. The battalion continually develops the situation to maintain the initiative and advantage over the enemy, remaining proactive in the execution of the mission. The staff conducts continuous planning to execute follow-on missions within the area that are assigned by higher headquarters, and issues fragmentary orders to subordinate elements to destroy/capture enemy threats that attempt to operate or infiltrate into the area.
6. The battalion maintains a quick reaction force and reserve to respond to enemy contact, civil disturbance, and/or any other anticipated or unanticipated contingency.
7. The commander must understand and be aware of his relationship with local authorities, the civilian population, multi-national forces, and other service components to insure the safety of all civilian and host nation government personnel.
8. The battalion maintains a record of information and intelligence developed during operations, so it is prepared to execute a relief-in-place or battle handover with higher, adjacent, or follow-on units.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-6307

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
-

LAR-INTL-7501: Process intelligence information

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a report, message, or captured document of potential intelligence value. Data analysis and Information processing must be done under all battlefield conditions.

STANDARD: Intelligence information is recorded, then analyzed to determine its tactical significance. The information is posted in accordance with local information management SOP and briefed to battalion commander or XO, as required.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. S2 section records the information in the intelligence journal and workbook.
2. S2 section posts and identifies information to the SITMAP.
3. S2 section prepares a SITMAP overlay.
4. S2 section creates a reference file.
5. S2 section updates the order of battle data base to ensure it contains current information.
6. S2 section evaluates the information to determine its usefulness.
7. S2 section analyzes the information to determine its intelligence value.
8. S2 section updates decision support template and event analysis matrixes.
9. S2 briefs battalion commander or XO.
10. S2 passes information to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-INTL-6501

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
 2. MCWP 2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections
-

LAR-INTL-7502: Process detained persons

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

CONDITION: Given detained persons, male and/or female, combatants and/or noncombatants. CI/ITT (Counter-intelligence/Interrogator Translator Team) support may be available.

STANDARD: Detained persons are correctly classified and processed in accordance with their classification. Enemy combatants are processed using

the five "S" method and are tagged with necessary information. Detained persons are treated humanely and accorded their rights under international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Capturing personnel search prisoners.
2. Trains or main CP OIC designates search and overwatch personnel.
3. Overwatch personnel position themselves.
4. Search personnel conduct a thorough search of the prisoners, equipment, and vehicles.
5. Search personnel collect all items of tactical significance.
6. Search personnel tag all EPW.
7. Trains or main CP recovers enemy KIA's if required by higher headquarters.
8. Search personnel segregate prisoners into different groups.
9. If guards are needed, trains or main CP provides guards for enemy WIA.
10. Search personnel silence all prisoners.
11. Overwatch personnel safeguard prisoners.
12. Friendly personnel search prisoners each time prisoners are transferred from the control of one unit to another.
13. Trains or main CP personnel take action to initiate hasty decontamination of contaminated detainees, if necessary.
14. Trains or main CP speeds prisoners to the rear.
15. Trains or main CP OIC designates a detainee collection point and holding area to secure detainees that are moved from other companies to the battalion for further processing.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-INTL-6501

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
2. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare

LAR-OPS-7503: Conduct staff planning procedures/orders development

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a battalion staff, special staff and tactical headquarters area that allows space for planning and writing. Battalion commander receives an order from higher headquarters and develop a tactical mission plan. Battalion is conducting troop-leading procedures.

STANDARD: The order addresses who, what, when, where, and how the mission is conducted and time permitting and is written in OPORD format. Graphic overlays and supporting material are completed prior to issue of order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. S3 section prepares the OPORD heading.
2. S3 and S2 sections prepare the situation paragraph (para 1).
3. S3 states the mission (para 2).
4. S3 prepares the execution paragraph (para 3).

5. S4 prepares CSS paragraph (para 4), which supports the scheme of maneuver.
6. Communications officer and S3 prepare command and signal paragraph (para 5).
7. S3 section prepares the ending.
8. S-2 conducts IPB.
9. Adhere to all applicable MCPP (Marine Corps Planning Process) component events.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

LAR-COMM-7504: Establish battalion command, control and communication nets

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operations order, including a higher Communication-Electronics Operations Instructions (CEOI), analog and digital voice and data communications equipment, while deployed in a tactical environment.

STANDARD: Communications procedures are developed and integrated with equipment to enable the effective command and control of the unit in the accomplishment of the commander's intent. Operators use correct radio procedures at all times. Secure equipment is utilized when required. Information is received and disseminated to higher and subordinate units accurately and quickly. All messages are logged in a journal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Battalion staff sections use the CEOI to determine and post call signs, frequencies, passwords, and other coded data.
2. Section radio operators set up wire communications.
3. Battalion radio operators set radio net IDs on assigned radio nets and change them at the proper time as determined by the CEOI and SOP.
4. Battalion staff sections open internal command and tactical nets.
5. Battalion staff sections open external command and tactical nets and battalion logistics net.
6. NCOICs and OICs receive and issue orders and reports from higher, lower, and supporting elements.
7. Prepare, post, and close daily journal.
8. Close all nets as required.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OPS-6503

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team
 2. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
 3. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

LAR-FSPT-7601: Conduct fire support planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: The fire support estimate of supportability can be either written or verbal depending on the situation, time available, and adequacy of SOP's.

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, direct fire support, EW, and organic mortars, and has a fully staffed fire support coordination center. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has indirect and direct fire, both rotary and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARD: The unit plans for fire support in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The fire support element participates in the targeting process (through a liaison officer and/or Fire Support Coordinator). The S-3 and FSC plans battle tracking processes. The unit plans fire support in support of the close battle. The S-3, FSC and Air Officer (AO) coordinate and deconflict all fire support and maneuver. The FSC and AO expedite immediate fire support requests (both indirect and CAS).

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Available fires are allocated to subordinate units, counterfire, interdiction, and suppression of enemy air defense (SEAD) fires.
2. The fire support coordinator identifies any ammunition and target restrictions, Rules of Engagement (ROE) restrictions, and policies that may impact on the availability and safe employment of artillery, NSFS, organic mortars, and air support.
3. Assigns priority of fires to the main attack.
4. Provides guidance on the desired effects (i.e., destroy, divert, delay, limit, and or obscure) on targets engaged based on ammunition and delivery means available.
5. Makes a recommendation to the battalion commander on whether to fire preparation fires.
6. Analyzes the targets to determine how much of and type of ordnance is required to achieve desired effects.
7. Determines the NSFS capabilities of the ships assigned in support; i.e., draft, number of turrets, fire control systems, and ammunition storage capacity.
8. Develops NSFS, air, and artillery estimates of requirements.
9. Consolidates overall fire support requirements, identifies any shortfalls, requests additional fire support assets, avoids duplication, and makes necessary adjustments to plans.
10. Submits during amphibious operations a detailed list of pre D-day, D-day, and post D-day fire support requirements based on established priorities. Submits requests for the scheduling of landing beach preparation fires to include procedures for adjusting the delivery of NSFS in relation to the movement of assault craft and the determination of safety limits during amphibious operations.

11. Submits overall fire support requirements for air, NSFS, and artillery to the higher command in a timely manner.
12. Submits request for jamming of enemy command and conduct of fire nets in a timely manner.
13. Coordinates the priority for the use of airspace to include authority to change the priority and instructions for conflict resolution.
14. Develops plans for the employment of obscuration and screening fires.
15. Coordinates and gains approval from the appropriate source when considering the employment of scatterable artillery and air-delivered mines, screen-jamming, and jamming of enemy counterbattery radar.
16. Plans counter-preparation fires to support the plan for the defense each time the battalion makes an extended halt.
17. Plans SEAD fires for targets in the vicinity of known or suspected surface to air missiles (SAM) or anti-aircraft artillery (AAA defenses).
18. Consolidates and integrates subordinate elements fire support plans into the battalions plan.
19. Following consolidation of all portions of the fire support plan, submits the plan to the commander for approval.
20. Publishes the battalion fire support plan as a separate supporting appendix to the operations annex of the operations order.
21. Prepares an overlay which indicates such items as the zones of action, boundaries, zones of fire, fire support areas or stations, fire support coordination measures, and target locations for all prearranged fires.
22. Considers combat service support needs of fire support units and their impact on the battle.
23. Conducts fire support planning for future operations based on existing contingency plans and updated intelligence on the threat.
24. Facilitates future operations through the tasking of assets, the positioning of fire support, and the allocation of ammunition.
25. Plans for only essential targets. Identifies priority targets and makes plans to shift as the operation progresses.
26. Plans for target acquisition and observation to include plans for laser employment.
27. Develops plans to shift fires.
28. Plans for fires to cover obstacles, barriers, gaps in friendly lines and flanks.
29. Plans for the integration of indirect fires and air support with direct fire weapons.
30. Plans for the integration of indirect fires and air support with direct fire weapons.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-FSPT-6602

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
2. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

LAR-FSPT-7602: Conduct fire support operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSF/S, EW, and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has indirect and direct fire weapons, rotary and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARD: The unit employs fire support in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The fire support element participates in the targeting process (through a liaison officer and/or Fire Support Coordinator). The S-3 and FSC conducts battle tracking to stay abreast of the situation. The unit executes fire support in support of the close battle. The S-3, FSC and Air Officer (AO) coordinate and deconflict all fire support and maneuver. The FSC and AO expedite immediate fire support requests (both indirect and CAS). The FSC ensures fires are observed to determine whether attack objectives are achieved. The AO controls and coordinates CAS to meet attack objectives.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Ensures that the FSCC is staffed and equipped by representatives from each fire support asset in support of the battalion.
2. Each liaison representative is capable of providing technical expertise on capabilities and limitations of the fire support means he represents, and has direct communications links to that asset.
3. Establishes methods to disseminate, in a timely and continuous manner, the information required and requested by the subordinate elements.
4. Establishes the fire support coordination reports and procedures per FSCC instructions contained in the SOP.
5. Identifies and disseminates laser targeting codes to be used.
6. Coordinates procedures to allow for timely updates on the threat and the weather.
7. Monitors the concurrent development of air and NSF/S fire plans by the SACC (Supporting Arms Coordination Center) and monitors the targeting process during amphibious operations.
8. Establishes procedures to ensure that requests for preplanned air, NSF/S, and communications and noncommunications jamming are made through the appropriate channels in a timely manner, recorded and staffed to avoid duplication, and examined to ensure proper weapons selection.
9. Coordinates procedures to ensure the timely receipt of the daily air tasking order (ATO).
10. Plans communications on those doctrinal radio nets prescribed in orders and SOP's to include covered communications.
11. Maintains the status of all available fire support assets.
12. Provides GCE representative to work in the SACC during the period prior to the passage of coordination responsibility ashore.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
 2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
 3. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support
-

LAR-FSPT-7603: Employ fire support coordination measures and procedures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, direct fire support, and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary- and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARD: None.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Provides recommendations for the establishment and location of fire support coordination measures; and those designated maneuver control measures which best facilitate maneuver actions and provide safeguards to protect friendly units.
 2. Minimizes coordination problems caused by the simultaneous flight of aircraft and the delivery of other supporting arms by carefully considering the location and types of targets, firing positions for artillery and mortars, and fire support areas for naval surface fire support ships.
 3. Coordinates with adjacent and higher units in cases of smoke, illumination, and/or fragmentation patterns extending into adjacent unit areas.
 4. Coordinates with adjacent or higher units FSCC for clearance if fires or the effects of those fires impact in another unit's zone or come within the constraints imposed by the higher FSCC.
 5. Ensures that all locations designated as Restricted Fire Areas (RFA)/No Fire Areas (NFA)/ are clearly marked on fire plan overlays, and disseminated to subordinate unit commanders and FO's.
 6. Plans the integration of air and surface-delivered fires using either formal or informal airspace coordination measures.
 7. Prepares coordinating instructions for the coordination and control of supporting arms.
 8. Provides input to the ACE for the preparation of a pilots/ controllers handbook.
 9. Coordinates with other fire support agencies to acquire tentative clearances, as required.
 10. Uses various aids to help in FS planning and coordination; e.g., attack guidance matrix or target precedence list, fire support status chart, situation map, overlays, fire support plan, fire support matrix and other support plans.
 11. Adheres to the common method for timing the delivery of fires within the unit. The method established may be synchronization using either "zulu" or "local" time zone.
 12. Conduct fire support coordination using the units standing operating procedures (SOP).
 13. Maintain adequate communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher echelons to facilitate fire support coordination.
-

LAR-FSPT-7604: Employ targeting and targeting intelligence

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting tactical operations to include amphibious, offensive, and defensive operations. The battalion is supported by air, artillery, NSFS, EW and organic mortars. The operations can occur during daylight or under limited visibility conditions. The enemy has direct and indirect fire weapons, rotary and fixed-wing aircraft, and EW capabilities.

STANDARD: The unit employs targeting and targeting intelligence in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The fire support element participates in the targeting process (through a liaison officer and/or Fire Support Coordinator). The unit S-3 and air officer (AO) coordinate aviation assets and advise the unit commander and staff on employment. The unit employs air defense assets within their capabilities. The unit monitors current operations of airspace users.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Exploits all collection assets organic to the battalion (e.g. NVGs, GSR, EW assets, and sensors) to assist in target acquisition.
2. Requests support from those target acquisition assets available to the higher unit as well as theater assets.
3. Advises the S-2 on the capabilities of the counterfire target acquisition assets to ensure their integration into the battalion collection effort.
4. Provides targets to subordinate units and augments these lists with other targets whose destruction or neutralization are vital to the battalion.
5. Resolves duplication in lists of targets prepared by subordinate units.
6. Conducts target analysis to determine tactical importance, priority of attack, and weapons required to obtain a desired level of damage or casualties.
7. Establishes targeting procedures that ensure the timely collection, processing, and dissemination of target data, and prepares and forwards nominations to the target list.
8. Targets are placed into the fire planning channels as soon as possible in order to facilitate processing.
9. Records target data on target cards, overlays, and other records.
10. Coordinates the use of a common target designation system with the higher unit.
11. Utilizes a target precedence list or the target value analysis (TVA) methodology including TVA spreadsheets and target sheets.
12. Informs subordinate elements of deletions, corrections, and/or modifications to the target list to include changes in the fire support means requested.
13. Considers close and deep targets.
14. Coordinates with the S-2 procedures for reporting target damage assessments, and receiving combat information.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-FSPT-6602

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
3. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Generally, targets are assigned priorities according to their potential danger to the completion of the overall mission. Specifically, priorities are given those targets that can: 1. Prevent the execution of the plan Priority 1. 2. Seriously interfere with the plan Priority 2. 3. Cause serious interference later Priority 3. 4. Cause limited interference Priority 4.

LAR-NBC-7605: React to a chemical/biological attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting tactical operations when one or more of the following occur: an automatic chemical agent alarm sounds or detector paper changes color. The chemical agent may be delivered or accompanied by indirect fire. This task must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion reacts to the attack so that protective measures are immediately initiated upon chemical agent identification, MOPP 4 level is reached without delay. NBC-1 reports (chemical) are submitted to higher headquarters, chemical surveying is initiated, and the battalion can resume the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Personnel identifying the attack put on protective masks and alert friendly units using radio, NBC alarm, messenger, etc.
2. All Marines don protective gear.
3. Crews button up vehicles.
4. Each Marine decontaminates skin, if required.
5. Battalion prepares WIA and KIA for evacuation.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-NBC-6606

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
 2. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
-

LAR-NBC-7606: Cross a chemically contaminated area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The battalion is conducting tactical operations and encounters a chemically contaminated area. The chemical agent may have been delivered by IED/indirect fire. Time and the mission dictate that the area cannot be bypassed. Must be done in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Battalion reacts to the attack so that protective measures are immediately initiated upon chemical agent detection. MOPP 4 is reached without delay. Chemical surveying initiated and NBC reports are submitted to HHQ. The battalion must use the best route across the area based on METT-TC. Casualties are treated and evacuated without spread of contamination.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit crosses contaminated area. (Avoids standing water. Increases internal and lateral dispersion. Keeps vehicles buttoned-up, if mission permits. Conducts dismounted movement only if essential. Individuals monitor others and self for chemical.)
2. Unit monitors continuously for chemical contamination...(Installs chemical agent alarms on vehicles with mounts. Monitors M8 and M9 detector paper for color changes.. Monitoring team tests positive reactions on M8 and M9 paper with M256 detector kit..)
3. Unit exits contaminated area.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-TAC-6401 LAR-NBC-6603 LAR-NBC-6606
LAR-MNVR-6104

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
2. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

LAR-LOG-7901: Conduct combat logistics patrol

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario that requires logistical sustainment and/or support, either as an independent battalion or as part of a larger unit.

STANDARD: The battalion coordinates requirements for logistical support; distributes sustainment to meet mission requirements; ensures the proper, secure, and timely use of supplies and equipment; and reports logistical status per unit SOPs.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit S-4 section establishes the combat trains as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1.
2. Unit S-4 identifies both continuous and mission support combat service support (CSS) requirements of the unit.
3. Forecast vehicle and weapon status, identify available transportation assets, determine supply status of classes I, III, IV, V, and IX, and determine maintenance status.

4. Prepare and update the logistics estimate.
5. Submit logistics estimate to S-3, executive officer (XO) and higher headquarters S-4/G-4.
6. Plan for special equipment, supplies, and services; assets to separate, disassemble, configure, uncrate, or transload supplies above normal requirements; reconstitution and reorganization; support of reconnaissance forces, security operations, or deception efforts; class IV/V obstacle material; pre-positioning of supplies; emergency resupply; attrition; Weapon System Replacement Operations (WSRO); field sanitation; transportation of supplies, replacements, deceased, and enemy prisoners of war (EPW); construction of facilities except for fortifications; clothing and equipment exchange; food preparation and water purification; mortuary affairs; laundry and shower services; battlefield procurement and contracting; recommendation of main supply route(s) (MSRs) and logistical support areas to the S-3.
7. Unit S-4 section maintains the current status of equipment readiness in the unit.
8. Monitor maintenance operations to evaluate the capability to support current operations.
9. Issue CSS annex to OPORD or OPLAN.
10. Approve and distribute administrative/logistics annex, prepare paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD or the CSS annex, submit paragraph 4 of the OPLAN or OPORD to S-3, develop administrative movement plans, prepare CSS overlay, prepare logistics matrix, recommend support and supply priorities and controlled supply rates (CSR), and determine required supply rates (RSR).
11. Plan transportation and movement.
12. Review and analyze all unit plans and orders for transportation impact.
13. Assist the S-3 plans element in planning and preparing tactical and administrative motor marches, and prepare administrative movement orders and march tables.
14. Select MSRs and other supply routes.
15. Ensure route supports the heaviest vehicle in the unit, refugees do not block routes, and route supports bi-directional traffic.
16. Coordinate routes with the military police (MP) officer in the maneuver support cell or augmented highway traffic control.
17. Unit S-4 section tracks the status of supplies.
18. The unit performs supply operations from the field trains (LOGPACs) and the combat trains.
19. When possible basic loads are maintained at 90 percent.
20. Basic loads of water, class III items (bulk and package POL), class V items (individual and crew served) and class VIII items are replenished to at least 50 percent.
21. Requisitions for Class IX items for 95 percent of PLL shortages are submitted daily.
22. High priority requisitions for PLL are submitted within 8 hours to expedite repair parts flow and correct and PLL zero parts balance.
23. Company or platoon representative picks up LOGPAC within 10 minutes of arrival at the logistics pickup point.
24. Coordinate with higher headquarters for additional maintenance assets and integration of augmentations into CSS plans.
25. Ensure that organic, assigned, and supporting units accomplish tactical level missions in support of the unit commander's scheme of maneuver in the area of logistics.
26. Unit S-4 analyzes and clearly articulates all logistical information that can affect the mission, particularly commander's critical information

requirements (CCIR).
27. Unit S-4 integrates risk management into CSS plans/operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
2. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support

INF-AMPH-7901: Conduct amphibious staff planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The unit comprises the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of an embarked MAGTF that has been directed to participate in amphibious operations. The Amphibious Force is currently in transit. Higher headquarters has received an initiating directive/warning order and has issued a planning directive/warning order based on the initial planning conference.

STANDARD: The unit participates in amphibious staff planning; develops and issues an order that meets the commander's intent and requirements of the specified/implicit tasks; makes necessary adjustments to the plan as reconnaissance and surveillance elements report; planning timelines are met; operational security is maintained; planning is coordinated with higher, adjacent and supporting/supported elements; unit personnel know mission critical information; and unit is appropriately prepared/equipped to accomplish mission through inspections, rehearsals and subordinate leader brief backs.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis.
2. Develop preliminary estimates based on the warning order and general planning guidelines provided by the higher commanders.
3. Formulate information requirements and recommend Priority Intelligence Requirements (PIRs) for the commander. Identify intelligence gaps to request response/collection from higher, subordinate and adjacent headquarters.
4. Commander issues planning guidance to his staff and subordinate element leaders; staff conducts initial Course of Action Development.
5. Conduct concurrent planning with MAGTF staff to select recommended Landing Area, Landing Force (LF) objectives, and beachhead for CLF/Commander Amphibious Task Force (CATF) approval.
6. Develop, in conjunction with the planning guidance and approved Landing Force (LF) objectives, additional Battalion Landing Team (BLT) objectives, if desired.
7. Brief estimate of supportability to the commander.
8. Conduct a thorough and continuous analysis of the terrain, weather, hydrographic conditions, and enemy situation throughout the planning process.
9. Conduct concurrent and parallel planning with all elements of the MAGTF during the development of a detailed scheme of maneuver, fire support plan, and landing plan.
10. Develop, publish, and disseminate the operation plan, embarkation plan,

landing plan, counter-mechanized plan, and/or alternate plan if those plans are not incorporated into standard operating procedures or the MAGTF plans.

11. Coordinate embarkation requirements for the detailed landing plan, including planning of air (Helicopter Availability Tables (HAT), Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table (HEALT), Helicopter Wave and Serial Assignment Table (HWSAT), and the Helicopter Landing Diagram (HLD)) and surface (serial assignment, landing diagrams, Landing Craft and Amphibian Vehicle Assignment Table (LCAVAT)) documents.
12. Arrange for reconnaissance of objective, if the situation permits.
13. Conduct rehearsals, inspections, and subordinate unit brief-backs.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. JOINT PUB 3-02.1 Landing Force Operations
3. JP 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
4. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. CAST - Combined Arms Staff Trainer
2. Amphibious training area suitable for the employment of all surface and airborne craft
3. Amphibious shipping

INF-AMPH-7902: Develop the landing plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The unit comprises the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of an embarked MAGTF and is in receipt of the MAGTF concept of operations and has developed a plan of attack that has been approved. Assault craft, to include assault support, landing craft and amphibious vehicles are available and have been assigned. The Amphibious Force is currently in transit.

STANDARD: The unit comprises the Ground Combat Element (GCE) of an embarked MAGTF and is in receipt of the MAGTF concept of operations and has developed a plan of attack that has been approved. Assault craft, to include assault support, landing craft and amphibious vehicles are available and have been assigned. The Amphibious Force is currently in transit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the amphibious vehicle availability table, helicopter availability table, and the landing craft availability table.
2. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.

3. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
4. Ensure the development of the landing plan is totally integrated with the initial scheme of maneuver and fire support plan, and provide for the rapid buildup of automatic and crew served weapons during the initial phase of the assault.
5. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure the proposed landing diagram, assault schedule, and landing sequence table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible, and forward these documents to the MAGTF commander for approval/consolidation.
6. Serial Assignment Table is based on the task organization for the landing; balances unit integrity and combat spread loading of critical personnel and equipment; and is forwarded to the MAGTF commander for approval.
7. Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with the affected units, compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents, provides for the rapid buildup of firepower (crew served weapons), and maintains the tactical integrity required by the plan of attack.
8. Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table and the Heliteam Wave and Serial Assignment Table is coordinated with the ACE and MEU CE, compatible with the previously approved landing plan documents, provides for the rapid buildup of firepower in the zone (crew served weapons), and maintains the tactical integrity required by the plan of attack.
9. Provide input for the development of the Approach Schedule.
10. Develop debarkation schedule, when applicable, and ensure its distribution to all personnel responsible for the control of debarkation.
11. Publish the landing plan as Appendix 3 to Annex R of the landing force operation order. Only those documents required by the unit are included as tabs to the appendix.
12. Develop alternate plans to cover foul weather interference and/or changes in enemy capabilities.
13. Assign adequate personnel to the Tactical-Logistical Group (TACLOG) to advise MAGTF and Navy control personnel on the location of troops, equipment, supplies, landing requirements, and of adjustments to the landing sequence.
14. Coordinate planning with MAGTF command element for pre D-Day transfers of units and equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. JOINT PUB 3-02.1 Landing Force Operations
3. JP 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17330 Covered Training Area
Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

ROOMS/BUILDINGS:

CAST - Combined Arms Staff Trainer

INF-AMPH-7903: Conduct an amphibious assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Given the order to land the landing force, and having prepared and issued an operations order, the unit has the assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MAGTF landing plan developed after the final rehearsal. Close, continuous, and detailed coordination among the CATF, MAGTF, GCE, ACE, and CSSE staff members, as well as unit commanders, has occurred throughout the entire planning process.

STANDARD: The amphibious assault achieves the commander's intent and requirements of the specified/IMPLIED tasks. Makes necessary adjustments to the plan as reconnaissance, and surveillance elements report. Lands per the execution timelines. Maintains operational security. Continuous coordination with higher, adjacent, and supporting/supported elements occurs. The execution demonstrates effective combined arms fires coordinated with maneuver in support of attaining assigned objectives.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Receive and disseminate the intelligence updates to subordinate units.
2. Landing/assault craft teams and heliteams are assembled, staged, and prepared for debarkation/enplanement.
3. Accomplish debarkation of initial assault elements on schedule.
4. Unit transitions command ashore to maintain continuous control of the operation. Unit commanders quickly gain/regain control of their units upon landing, and maintain momentum of the attack by avoiding unnecessary delay in the zone/beach.
5. Coordinate and adjust the employment of forces as the situation develops and changes, integrating maneuver and fires.
6. Establishes and maintains communications ashore.
7. Coordinate logistic support for assaulting ground combat element through the TACLOG.
8. Attains mission objectives based on the commander's intent.
9. Processes casualties and EPWs as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. JOINT PUB 3-02.1 Landing Force Operations
3. JP 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
4. MCDP 3 Expeditionary Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces
Facility Code 17908 Amphibious Vehicle Training Area
Facility Code 17909 Ship Loading and Unloading Mockup

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Amphibious training area suitable for the employment of all surface and airborne craft.

2. Beach suitable for amphibious landing.
3. AAV Unit
4. Helicopter support
5. Suitable landing zone
6. Amphibious shipping
7. Landing craft
8. MILES Gear

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Event scenario includes opposition forces that introduce friction and require the landing force to make adjustments throughout the assault.
 2. Appropriate blank ammunition is required.
-

INF-OFF-7119: Conduct a counterattack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The unit has been ordered to conduct a planned counterattack. The enemy has attacked a friendly unit.

STANDARD: Unit conducts passage of lines, and either defeats the enemy or closes the penetration the enemy has created in the friendly unit's defenses. Unit achieves the commander's intent and is prepared to re-establish defensive positions or continue the attack as directed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Initiate and coordinate movement to designated attack position.
2. Organize, position, and equip blocking positions in sufficient strength to delay the enemy.
3. Conduct a successful passage of lines in those occupied areas that cannot be avoided by the counterattack unit.
4. Coordinate the delivery of direct and indirect fires in support of the counterattack.
5. Maneuver force commander controls all troops and fires within the area of penetration.
6. Ensure specified control measures are adequate to control movement and fires.
7. Ensure maneuver forces do not attack forward of the limit of advance.
8. Re-establish local security measures.
9. Consolidate the defense and adjust defensive assignments as required.
10. Report expulsion of the enemy force and re-establishment of the FEBA to higher command elements.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces
Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded
Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range
Facility Code 17631 Light Antiarmor Weapons Range Live
Facility Code 17670 Mortar Range
Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range
Facility Code 17730 Fire and Movement Range
Facility Code 17936 Close Air Support Range

INF-INT-7401: Direct the intelligence effort

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given an operation order and higher intelligence, reconnaissance, and surveillance plan, the unit is participating in combat operations and is supported by organic and non-organic reconnaissance and surveillance elements, and has connectivity to support the integration of higher and supporting analysis, intelligence, and collection assets.

STANDARD: The unit directs the tactical intelligence effort in support of combat operations, to include: collection, dissemination, counterintelligence, and security. Collects and disseminates information requirements based on a collection plan. Consolidates and reports intelligence information to higher headquarters.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develops a collection plan based on the commander's CCIR for organic, non-organic, and supporting collection assets that provides for the continuous collection of information throughout all phases of the operation. Identify information shortfalls from the original Essential Elements of Information (EEIs) requested.
2. Coordinates, collects, and evaluates information through a systematic collection and analysis process.
3. Uses all organic collection assets and requests collection support to meet the commander's intent and specified and implied tasks.
4. Integrates the collected information with other information, disseminates to subordinate units, and reports information to higher headquarters.
5. Coordinates and supports information requirements to commander, staff and subordinate units, including: maps, charts, terrain models, aerial imagery, and other graphic aids; analysis of enemy, friendly, and terrain and weather data; and deconflicts and supports subordinate unit collection efforts.
6. Assists in conducting targeting in support of fires.
7. Coordinates the insertion, direction, reporting, and recovery of organic reconnaissance and surveillance assets.
8. Coordinates active and passive counterintelligence efforts and measures.
9. Assists in directing counter-reconnaissance efforts.
10. Assists in the processing of captured personnel and equipment.
11. Implements access control measures for the security of friendly information.

12. Provides intelligence reports to higher headquarters as required.
13. Request ISR assets from HHQ (e.g. CI/HET, SST, etc) and manage their employment.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
3. MCRP 2-15.3B Reconnaissance Reports Guide
4. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
5. MCWP 2-12 MAGTF Intelligence Production and Analysis
6. MCWP 2-13 MAGTF Intelligence Dissemination
7. MCWP 2-14 Counterintelligence
8. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)
9. MCWP 2-24B Remote Sensor Operations
10. MCWP 2-26 Geographic Intelligence

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. CAST - Combined Arms Staff Trainer

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Scenario events that support evaluation of the task must be developed and integrated into an exercise, e.g., civilian role players, enemy units, higher collection and intelligence information.

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE COMPANY

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	4000	4-2
EVENT CODING	4001	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	4002	4-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	4003	4-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	4004	4-4
COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	4005	4-5

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE COMPANY

4000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Company level Light Armor Reconnaissance unit events (6000 Level), and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies (Mission Essential Tasks (METs) and unit training (Collective events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and/or Battalion Collective event, and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the steering point for the Platoon training detailed in the subsequent chapters.

4001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "LAR" indicating that the event is for units in the Light Armor Reconnaissance Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Company level are:

DEF - Defensive Operations	FSPT - Fire Support
INTL - Intelligence Operations	LOG - Logistics
MNVR - Maneuver	MOBL - Mobility
OFF - Offensive Operations	NBC - Nuclear, Biological & Chemical
OPS - Staff Functions	TAC - Other Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, participates in and conducts operations in a nuclear, biological and chemical environment.
2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.
3. Participates in, and conducts a passage of lines, relief in place and link up as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.
4. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.
5. Conducts overwatch and support another unit by fire.
6. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts operations in urban environments.
7. Participates in and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations and security operations.
8. Constructs and breaches obstacles.
9. Processes enemy prisoners of war/detainees.
10. Processes and evacuates casualties.
11. Prepares for, participates in, and conducts route, area and zone reconnaissance operations.
12. Prepares for, plans, and executes company level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, raid, defend, delay, screen, ambush, disengage withdrawal, and consolidate.
13. Contributes to tactical logistics planning.
14. Submits reports and intelligence information.
15. Logistically sustain a unit.
16. Participates in and conducts fire support planning.
17. Operates a company command post.
18. Prepares and submits unit fire plan sketches.
19. Participates in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW).

4004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
LAR-MNVR-6101	YES	Conduct zone reconnaissance	4-5
LAR-MNVR-6102	YES	Conduct area reconnaissance	4-6
LAR-MNVR-6103	YES	Perform a route reconnaissance	4-7
LAR-MNVR-6104		Conduct a tactical movement	4-8
LAR-MNVR-6105		Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques	4-9
LAR-MNVR-6106		Assist a passage of lines	4-9
LAR-MNVR-6107		Conduct a passage of lines	4-10
LAR-MNVR-6108		Conduct a relief in place	4-11
LAR-MOBL-6109	YES	Conduct convoy security operations	4-12
LAR-MOBL-6110		Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle	4-13
LAR-MOBL-6111		Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing	4-14
LAR-OFF-6201		Conduct a movement to contact	4-14
LAR-OFF-6202	YES	Conduct a hasty attack	4-15
LAR-OFF-6203	YES	Conduct a raid	4-16
LAR-OFF-6204	YES	Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment	4-17
LAR-OFF-6205	YES	Conduct a cordon and search	4-18
LAR-DEF-6301		Occupy an assembly area	4-19
LAR-DEF-6302	YES	Conduct a screen	4-20
LAR-DEF-6303		Defend a battle position	4-21
LAR-DEF-6304	YES	Defend in company sector	4-22
LAR-DEF-6305	YES	Delay in company sector	4-23
LAR-DEF-6306	YES	Conduct a withdrawal	4-25
LAR-DEF-6307	YES	Conduct area security	4-26
LAR-TAC-6401		Perform actions on contact	4-27
LAR-INTL-6501		Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment	4-28
LAR-OPS-6502	YES	Prepare for combat operations	4-29
LAR-OPS-6503		Establish and operate a command post	4-30
LAR-FSPT-6601		Conduct fire support planning	4-31
LAR-FSPT-6602	YES	Conduct Fire Support Team (FIST) operations	4-32
LAR-NBC-6603		React to a chemical/biological attack	4-33
LAR-NBC-6604		Cross a chemically contaminated area	4-33
LAR-NBC-6605		Conduct monitor survey operations	4-34
LAR-NBC-6606		Conduct MOPP gear exchange	4-35
LAR-LOG-6901		Conduct tactical logistics	4-35
INF-AMPH-6901	YES	Prepare for combat operations	4-36
INF-MED-6403	YES	Process casualties	4-37
INF-OOTW-6703	YES	Conduct non-combatant evacuation operations (NEO)	4-38
INF-OOTW-6704	YES	Conduct a tactical recovery of aircraft and personnel (TRAP)	4-39

4005. COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

LAR-MNVR-6101: Conduct zone reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is ordered to complete a zone reconnaissance by a specified time. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions and the company will be operating in an area occupied by elements of the forward security force. The company has fixed-wing/rotary wing CAS available.

STANDARD: The company must collect and report information on dominant and key terrain within the zone. The company must obtain detailed information concerning all routes, obstacles, terrain, and all enemy forces within the zone defined by boundaries within designated start and/or completion times, and reports all required information to higher headquarters. All applicable component tasks must be accomplished.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander deploys elements for zone reconnaissance and provides guidance for FiST planning/employment of supporting arms to facilitate the reconnaissance.
2. CP, mortars, and trains are positioned in covered and concealed positions that best support the conduct of the reconnaissance.
3. Reconnoiters and determines trafficability of all routes within the zone.
4. Reconnoiters all open terrain within the zone, determining trafficability of all open terrain, cover and concealment information, intervisibility information, and updates all map data.
5. Inspects and classifies all bridges within the zone.
6. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges in zone.
7. Inspects and classifies all overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
8. Reconnoiters all defiles within the zone to locate all enemy or obstacles within the defile; destroys enemy within capability or locates a bypass. Reduces or bypasses all obstacles within the defile.
9. Locates a bypass around mines, obstacles, and barriers. If bypass not available, reduces obstacles/barriers within capability.
10. Identifies any contaminated areas and locates a bypass safe from contamination.
11. Company finds all enemy forces within the zone, determining locations, strength, composition, and activity.
12. Detects all enemy within the zone and reports to higher headquarters. Destroys or repels all enemy elements (IAW higher commander's intent) by employing indirect fires as the primary means, and direct fires as a last resort.
13. Reports reconnaissance information to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-5101

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task may be conducted to standard via simulation tactical exercise without troops.

LAR-MNVR-6102: Conduct area reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance by a specified time. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions and the company will be operating in an area occupied by elements of the forward security force. The company has fixed-wing/rotary wing CAS available.

STANDARD: The company must collect and report information on dominant and key terrain within the area. The company must obtain detailed information concerning all routes, obstacles, terrain, and all enemy forces within the area defined by boundaries within designated start and/or completion times, and reports all required information to higher headquarters. All applicable component tasks must be accomplished.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company deploys elements for area reconnaissance and provides guidance for FiST planning/employment of supporting arms to facilitate the reconnaissance.
2. Determines trafficability of all major routes within the area.
3. Reconnoiters all open terrain within the zone, determine trafficability, cover and concealment information, intervisibility information, and updates all map data.
4. Inspects and classifies all bridges within the zone.
5. Locates suitable fording or crossing sites near all bridges within the area.
6. Inspects and classifies overpasses, underpasses, and culverts.
7. Locates mines, obstacles, and barriers in the area.
8. Locates a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
9. Reconnoiters terrain that dominates the area, if required.
10. Identifies any contaminated areas and locates a bypass safe from contamination.
11. Reconnoiters all defiles within the area to locate all enemy or obstacles within the defile; destroys enemy within capability or locates a bypass. Reduces or bypasses all obstacles within the defile.
12. Company detects all enemy within the area and reports information to higher headquarters. Destroys enemy elements within capability and fixes elements that cannot be destroyed, IAW higher commander's intent.
13. Reports reconnaissance information to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-5102

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task may be conducted to standard via simulation (tactical exercise without troops).

LAR-MNVR-6103: Perform a route reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance and is given a start point (SP), release point, start and/or completion times, and any specific information available on the route to include enemy situation. Threat forces are establishing hasty defensive positions and the company will be operating in an area occupied by elements of the forward security force.

STANDARD: The company must collect and report information on the designated route and terrain on either side of the route that could be used to influence along the route. The company must orient on the reconnaissance objective, retain freedom of maneuver, and maintain contact if threat forces are encountered. All component tasks must be accomplished.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Commander deploys elements for route reconnaissance and provides guidance for FiST planning/employment of supporting arms to facilitate the reconnaissance.
2. Elements positioned on flanks of the reconnaissance element on the route.
3. Elements positioned forward of the reconnaissance element on the route.
4. Reconnaissance element on the route determines trafficability of the route, locating and evaluating all bridges, fords, and or crossing sites near bridges.
5. Road surface composition, width, restrictive curves and steep grades of the route are evaluated.
6. Reconnaissance element on the route locates and classifies all underpasses, tunnels, and culverts on the route.
7. Reconnaissance element on the route identifies all other restrictive passages or obstacles, and evaluates potential passages.
8. Company reconnoiters adjacent terrain that can influence the route, gaining terrain trafficability information, cover and concealment available and intervisibility data.
9. Company reconnoiters all built-up areas on each side of the routes by moving elements to the flanks of the area where vehicles can occupy covered and concealed overwatch positions.
10. Company reconnoiters all lateral routes out to the enemy's maximum effective weapons range.
11. Company reconnoiters all defiles to locate all enemy or obstacles within the defile; destroys enemy within capability or locates a bypass. Clears or bypasses all obstacles within the defile.

12. Company identifies any contaminated areas, and locates a bypass safe from contamination.
13. Company detects all enemy along the route and all enemy within direct-fire range of the route. Destroys enemy elements within capability and fixes elements that cannot be destroyed, within higher commander's intent.
14. Company prepares a route classification overlay IAW unit SOP.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-5103

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
-

LAR-MNVR-6104: Conduct a tactical movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an LAR company and an appropriate operation order, the company must move from one location to another along a designated route. Threat condition is probable.

STANDARD: The company must cross the SP at the appointed time, utilizing the formation specified in the OPORD. The company must maintain 360-degree security during the movement and arrive at the designated destination without personnel or equipment loss.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination with battalion and supporting/adjacent units.
2. Issue order to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
3. Conduct rehearsals, subordinate unit backbriefs, and inspections prior to departure.
4. Company elements follow the prescribed route, adhering to the briefed order of movement, march interval, and rate of march.
5. Elements use prescribed catch-up speed to close with vehicles in front to reestablish march interval.
6. Maintenance checks on vehicles are performed during movement execution IAW unit SOP.
7. Company maintains 360 degree observation.
8. During halts, vehicles pull to the side of the road, maintaining the prescribed interval, and establish local security.
9. Higher headquarters informed of all breakdowns.
10. Personnel from disabled vehicle establish local security and provide guide(s) to direct traffic until recovery element with security arrives.
11. Designated recovery element with security attempts to repair disabled vehicles.
12. Vehicle(s) that cannot be repaired are recovered with organic towing or trailering capability. If the vehicle(s) cannot be recovered, all personnel, communications equipment, and essential/sensitive cargo are

- transferred to another vehicle(s). Locations of abandoned vehicle(s) are reported for follow-on recovery elements.
13. Reacts to enemy contact in accordance with unit SOPs briefed and rehearsed prior to departure.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-5104

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
-

LAR-MNVR-6105: Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operation order, the company must move in tactical formations and utilize movement techniques that are appropriate to the situation.

STANDARD: The company must chose the correct formation and movement techniques based off of the METT-TC.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company determines appropriate movement techniques and formations based off of METT-TC.
2. Company demonstrates proficiency in the following movement techniques: Traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch.
3. Company demonstrates proficiency in the following movement formations: Column, staggered column, vee, and line formations.
4. Company executes herringbone or coil formation when it must establish local security during a halt.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-5105

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
-

LAR-MNVR-6106: Assist a passage of lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The company is defending or delaying and is required to assist a passage of lines. The enemy can attack with direct fire, CAS, artillery, or

company-sized mounted, or dismounted forces. The company has artillery and fixed-wing/rotary-wing CAS available.

STANDARD: The company must support the passing unit in completing all applicable component tasks of a passage of lines, within the time specified in the order. The company provides security to ensure neither unit is infiltrated by the enemy. The passing unit must sustain no casualties as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company receives the task to assist a passage of another unit, and initiates coordination with the passing unit or higher headquarters.
2. Coordinates composition by types and number of vehicles of passing unit.
3. Coordinates passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
4. Coordinates recognition signals and guide activities.
5. Coordinates CEOI information.
6. Coordinates moving unit arrival time at contact points.
7. Coordinates procedures for the stationary force to provide combat support/combat service support.
8. Coordinates release points.
9. Coordinates procedure for handover of the battle or enemy contact.
10. Passes current information regarding the enemy situation.
11. Fire support plan is developed to support the passage, and details are coordinated between Fire Support Teams.
12. Passes current information regarding locations of barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
13. Platoons overwatch battle handover line and the passing unit as it executes the passage.
14. Company deploys to assist the passage by manning contact points and marking routes and lanes for the passing unit to utilize.
15. Company guides the passing unit along specified routes/lanes to release points, reports completion of the passage and closes any gaps in obstacles.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

LAR-MNVR-6107: Conduct a passage of lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is required to perform a passage of lines as the moving unit. The battalion operation order has specified a time when the passage is to be completed. The company has artillery and fixed-wing/rotary-wing CAS available once it completes the passage (if conducting a forward passage of lines).

STANDARD: The company must move all personnel and equipment through the stationary unit NLT the time specified in the order, and complete all component tasks. The company provides security to ensure that neither unit is

infiltrated by the enemy. The company retains freedom of maneuver and offensive capability during the forward or rearward passage.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company receives the task to conduct a rearward or forward passage of lines with another (stationary) unit, and initiates coordination with the stationary unit or higher headquarters.
2. The company commander and stationary force commander (or their authorized representatives) meet and arrange for time and location for coordinating the passage of their respective companies.
3. The commanders (or representatives) coordinate a reconnaissance.
4. Company coordinates pertinent information with the stationary unit, to include terrain, location and activity of the enemy, locations of friendly positions, contact and passage points, obstacle and fire plans.
5. Company exchanges relevant graphic control measures, to include battle handover lines, passage lanes, and conditions for battle handover.
6. Exchanges communications information, signal plan, challenge and password, and procedures to be used by the company and guides during the passage.
7. Both units send representatives to man the contact point(s) and complete final coordination concerning recognition signals, type and number of vehicles and personnel, passing times, security measures, locations of stationary unit positions, and release points.
8. If time permits, elements conduct reconnaissance of the passage points/lanes prior to execution, without revealing the operation to the enemy.
9. The company departs its position and elements link up with guides, who lead the elements from the contact point(s) through the passage lane(s) and passage points(s) to the release point.
10. Once clear of the release points, elements move to covered and concealed positions or conduct linkup and transition immediately to the formation specified by the company commander and the company continues mission.
11. Passage is completed rapidly, minimizing exposure time, and reported to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

LAR-MNVR-6108: Conduct a relief in place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is conducting offensive or defensive operations. The company is ordered to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. The incoming and outgoing company commanders have coordinated for the relief. The relief may be conducted either to maximize security or to maximize speed of completion. Threat contact is not likely during the relief.

STANDARD: The relief must be completed by the time of "change of responsibility" specified in the order, and it must not compromise the

operation to threat observers or intelligence collectors, either visually or by radio traffic. Continuous observation of the company's sector of fire (defensive reliefs) must be achieved and there must be no friendly casualties as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Exchange liaison personnel early in the planning.
2. Provide an operations overlay and a copy of the fragmentary order to the relieving unit.
3. Conduct detailed coordination and liaison between representatives of fire support units in support of both units at the command post (CP)/combat operations center (COC) of the unit to be relieved.
4. Provide fire plan sketches or overlays to the incoming units.
5. Maintain security elements at a normal level of activity.
6. Engage command relationships and responsibilities are well understood.
7. Use guides effectively to lead incoming units into positions and to lead units out of position.
8. Relieve local security units last.
9. Keep fire support assets in position throughout the relief of maneuver units. Ensure they are prepared to support both units.
10. Keep liaison personnel in position until the incoming unit is in place.
11. Every Marine/team/element briefs the Marine/team/element he is relieving as to his duties and responsibilities, etc.
12. Maintain all-round security throughout the entire relief units.
13. Respond to enemy actions, i.e., indirect fire, enemy contact, according to the plan.
14. Account for all personnel, supplies, and equipment.
15. Complete the relief within the time allotted.
16. Relinquish responsibility for the area upon agreement by the commanders and after approval from the higher commander.
17. Submit tactical reports in a timely and accurate manner.
18. Coordinate the transfer or exchange of supplies and equipment to include: communication, wire lines, radio antennas, and POL (petroleum, oils, and lubricants).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

LAR-MOBL-6109: Conduct convoy security operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an LAR company and an operations order or fragmentary order, the company is tasked with providing security for a convoy or combat logistics patrol.

STANDARD: The company makes coordination with the supported commander and makes recommendations on the employment of his vehicles. Company provides security and employs its elements in accordance with the operations order.

Company maintains communications with higher headquarters. Company ensures safe and timely arrival of the supported unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct coordination with escorted unit.
2. Company issues operations or fragmentary order.
3. Company conducts link-up with element to be escorted and conducts final coordination and rehearsals.
4. Company conducts escort mission.
5. Company conducts actions at halts as directed by escort element commander, order, or based on METT-TC.
6. Company executes actions on contact.
7. Company reports completion of escort mission to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MOBL-5112

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support
-

LAR-MOBL-6110: Conduct in-stride breach of an obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The company is conducting a movement or combat patrol and encounters an obstacle that it can breach using organic assets.

STANDARD: The company must breach the obstacle without loss or damage to equipment or personnel.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company employs applicable fundamentals of SOSR (Secure, Obscure, Suppress and Reduce Obstacle).
2. Fragmentary order is issued.
3. Breach is conducted without loss or damage of personnel or equipment.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MOBL-5110

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. FMFM 13-7 MAGTF Breaching Operations
 4. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
-

LAR-MOBL-6111: Conduct a hasty river/gap crossing

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The company receives a battalion operation/fragmentary order directing a water crossing. The crossing area is designated by battalion headquarters. The company is not in contact, though contact is possible. Initial reconnaissance reports indicate that the crossing area is occasionally patrolled by enemy squad-sized elements and that there are sites that can be crossed with available assets.

STANDARD: Preplanning is conducted so that fire support and crossing means are available upon arrival at the crossing site. All company elements must cross within the time specified in the order. Unit security must be maintained by organic support elements. Company does not sustain losses during the crossing, and retains freedom of maneuver. All applicable component tasks are accomplished.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander preplans the crossing operation.
2. Company plans for indirect fires.
3. Company establishes security.
4. Company scouts make an assessment of the fording/crossing site in accordance with unit SOP and commander's directives.
5. Designated personnel conduct an assessment of site.
6. Company crosses the body of water with scouts fording and remainder using tactical bridging.
7. Company commander directs crossing to begin.
8. Fording platoon(s) execute their assigned mission.
9. Scout platoon(s) that do not ford execute their assigned mission.
10. Company commander directs overwatch elements to cross to far side and retrieve AVLB.
11. Company commander reports completion of crossing and current position to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
-

LAR-OFF-6201: Conduct a movement to contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is conducting offensive operations as a higher headquarters' advance guard. Enemy reconnaissance elements are trying to locate the higher headquarters main body. Both the company and the enemy have indirect fire available.

STANDARD: The company must destroy or repel all enemy reconnaissance elements or patrols of platoon size or smaller. The company must locate and maintain contact with the enemy forward security element and prevent the reconnaissance elements/patrols from locating the higher headquarters main body. The company must maintain freedom of movement and retain offensive capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Coordinate with adjacent and supporting units throughout the operation.
2. Formation for movement is selected in order to allow platoons to rapidly attack or support-by-fire based on METT-TC.
3. Begin the movement on time and in the specified formation.
4. Deploy mounted scouts to lead through terrain that permits vehicle movement but is untrafficable for, or canalizes LAVs.
5. Advance guard is employed in a formation that is based on the probability of enemy contact and far enough forward to provide time and space for the commander to react to enemy contact or obstacles.
6. Company reconnoiters routes and inspects all bridges, culverts, overpasses, and underpasses along high-speed routes.
7. Obstacles that cannot be bypassed are reduced within capability.
8. Conduct resupply and recovery operations as required.
9. Subordinate elements use and report control measures that provide control for elements and fires, and are appropriate to the enemy situation and terrain.
10. Treat and evacuate casualties.
11. The bulk of combat power remains in an uncommitted status during movement to permit its rapid employment during contact with the enemy.
12. Process suspected and known enemy prisoners of war.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-5201

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company
-

LAR-OFF-6202: Conduct a hasty attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is operating as part of a battalion during a movement to contact. The enemy unit is occupying a battle position. The enemy force is inferior, only possesses short range (maximum range of 1,000m) anti-armor systems, and can be suppressed.

STANDARD: The company must attack the enemy position, resulting in the destruction, capture, or withdrawal of all enemies on the objective. The company must sustain no casualties as a result of friendly fire, and retain freedom of maneuver and offensive capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The forward platoon reconnoiters the enemy area to determine the general size of the enemy force, where most of the enemy's weapon systems are oriented, location of enemy flanks, and location obstacles emplaced in vicinity of the enemy position.
2. The forward platoon finds the best routes into the flanks of the enemy positions, locates high-speed routes, and covered and concealed approaches.
3. Company commander establishes an assault element.
4. Company commander establishes a support by fire (SBF) element.
5. Company isolates the enemy position with indirect fires.
6. Enemy position is suppressed by company weapon systems while the assault element moves into assault position.
7. Company attacks by fire or fire and maneuver, lifting or shifting fires as required covering the assault element's movement.
8. The assault element destroys enemy on the objective and consolidates in vicinity of the objective, clearing the immediate area with dismounted scouts to capture prisoners and other items of tactical value.
9. The company consolidates on the objective and immediately establishes hasty defensive positions.
10. Platoons establish OPs on high-speed avenues of approach into the company position.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-5202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
3. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company

LAR-OFF-6203: Conduct a raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is ordered to conduct a raid into enemy territory to collect information, cause confusion, destroy material, or disrupt enemy plans. The objective is lightly defended. The higher headquarters' operation order specifies departure and return times, and outlines the specific tasks to be accomplished. The raid may be conducted by the company only or by the company reinforced.

STANDARD: The company must accomplish all assigned tasks within the allotted time, retain freedom of maneuver and maintain its offensive capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Organize for the raid and arrange for a planned withdrawal.
2. Conduct a reconnaissance of the objective.
3. Assign each element a withdrawal plan.
4. Ensure security elements occupy designated positions to the flanks and rear of the unit and along high-speed avenues of approach to the

- objective.
5. Move support element to a covered and concealed position from which well aimed fire can be placed on the objective.
 6. Move assault element to the designated assault position. The assault position should be close enough to the objective for immediate assault, if detected before the planned assault.
 7. Plan direct or indirect fires on known and suspected enemy position(s).
 8. Ensure security element prevents enemy entry into or escape from the objective area.
 9. Ensure assault element fights through, consolidates, and reorganizes on the far side of the objective.
 10. Assault element conducts actions on the objective in accordance with higher headquarters OPORD. Suspected and known enemy personnel are processed as well as items of intelligence value.
 11. Support element conducts re-supply and processes casualties as required.
 12. On order, the unit withdraws from the objective to a designated rally point.
 13. Execute withdrawal.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-5203

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
3. FMFM 7-32 Raid Operations

LAR-OFF-6204: Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company receives an operations order or fragmentary order to conduct operations in a small town. Threat contact is probable.

STANDARD: The company must adhere to the principles of MOUT operations outlined in MCWP 3-25.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain and applicable component events.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Issue operations order and conduct prepare for combat checks.
2. Depart friendly lines.
3. Conduct assigned mission in accordance with the principles of MOUT operations outlined in MCWP 3-25.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain.
4. Utilize tactical control measures such as an urban grid reference system, checkpoints, phase lines, rally points, etc.
5. Utilize unit SOPs when encountering danger areas.
6. Maintain all-around security.
7. Conduct appropriate fire support planning.
8. Submit reports as required IAW unit SOPs.

9. Re-enter friendly lines.
10. Conduct patrol debrief, consolidate information, and forward to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-5206

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

LAR-OFF-6205: Conduct a cordon and search

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order to conduct a cordon and search to locate enemy personnel, weapons, or equipment in a hostile environment with appropriate reinforcements (engineers, EOD, military working dogs, tanks, infantry, etc.) during daylight or periods of reduced visibility.

STANDARD: Order issued to all participating and supporting personnel. Company is task organized with HQ, cordon (security) elements, search elements, and reaction force or reserve. Once cordon is established enemy personnel are unable to escape search area. Search discovers all enemy personnel, weapons, and equipment in the search area. Company retains freedom of maneuver in order to execute follow-on missions based on information obtained during the search.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination with battalion headquarters and supporting/adjacent units.
2. Task organize the company.
3. Issue order to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
4. Conduct rehearsals, subordinate unit backbriefs, and inspections prior to departing assembly area.
5. Establish inner and outer cordons around search area/location and prevent movement into/out of the area.
6. Interact with civilians to gain cooperation from the local residents and gather information about search objectives.
7. Search and/or interview all civilians/non-combatants for suspected enemy personnel.
8. Search all buildings or likely cache sites for enemy weapons, equipment or other contraband.
9. Avoid unnecessary damage to civilian property.
10. Immediately report and attempt to exploit information gained from questioning civilians or detainees or from hidden caches.
11. React to enemy contact in accordance with unit SOP's briefed prior to the operation.

12. Upon completion of the cordon and search debrief unit actions and reaction to enemy contact.
13. Report observations/after action items to battalion and adjacent units.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
2. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company
3. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
4. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance

LAR-DEF-6301: Occupy an assembly area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The company is given the order to move and occupy an assembly area in preparation for combat operations. The assembly area may be in open terrain, urban area or heavily vegetated area. The enemy threat is probable.

STANDARD: The company quartering party must complete area preparations and guide the company main body into position no later than the time specified in the order. The company main body must not be surprised by the enemy, and move into the area uninterrupted; elements are not held up outside the assembly. The company completes preparation no later than the time specified in the operation order.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company commander organizes a quartering party, coordinates personnel and equipment requirements with the company gunnery sergeant, and issues tasks to subordinate commanders.
2. Quartering party mission is briefed and rehearsed if time permits.
3. The company quartering party moves along the route of march, maintaining security during movement and reconnoitering the route from SP to RP.
4. The quartering party commander reports critical information back to the company main body.
5. The quartering party moves into the company assembly area and prepares the area for the element's arrival.
6. Selects and marks routes from the release point to new locations.
7. Selects and posts guides in time to meet the main body.
8. Marks entrances, exits, and internal routes.
9. Marks vehicle positions, where maximum cover, concealment, and dispersion provide 360 degree security.
10. Marks obstacles.
11. Organizes local security.
12. Main body arrives and quartering party guides (waiting in covered and concealed positions) move out to guide elements to selected or designated areas without halting.
13. The company establishes the assembly area's perimeter.
14. Establishes priority of work (may vary by unit SOP and METT-TSL).
15. Positions vehicles/crew-served weapons to cover the sectors of fire.
16. Establishes OPs on critical avenues of approach.
17. Constructs individual and crew-served fighting positions.
18. Emplaces chemical agent alarms and early warning devices.

19. The company begins internal operation of the assembly area.
20. Conducts preventive maintenance checks and services on vehicles and equipment.
21. Distributes ammunition, rations, water, supplies, and special equipment.
22. Establishes personal hygiene and field sanitation site.
23. Establishes noise, light, and camouflage discipline.
24. Institutes rest plan for element members and commanders.
25. The company commander or XO coordinates, at a minimum, with adjacent elements and establishes responsibility for overlapping enemy avenues of approach between adjacent units, exchanged information on OP locations and signal plans, and coordinated local counterattacks.
26. The defensive plan is developed and forward to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-5301

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

LAR-DEF-6302: Conduct a screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is ordered to screen for a larger force. Enemy reconnaissance elements are operating in the area.

STANDARD: The company must establish the screen at the correct location, and not later than the time specified in the higher headquarters operation order. The company must maintain continuous surveillance of high speed avenues of approach into the assigned sector. Provide early warning of enemy approach and accurately report enemy activity. Gain and maintain contact with enemy main body, while impeding and harassing with direct and indirect fires. Within its capabilities, destroy enemy reconnaissance elements. Unless directed, do not become decisively engaged.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Maintain continuous surveillance of the area of operations, including all assigned Named Areas of Interest (NAIs), or avenues of approach into the sector.
2. Provide early warning of threat approach.
3. Within capability and based on the commanders guidance, identify threat reconnaissance units, and in coordination with other combat elements, destroy them.
4. Gain and maintain contact with the threat main body, report threat activity, and conduct proper hand over with other elements.
5. Impede and harass the threat main body by use of direct and indirect fires.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-5302

REFERENCES :

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
-

LAR-DEF-6303: Defend a battle position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is operating tactically and has been ordered to defend a battle position NLT a specified time, as part of battalion defense. The enemy consists of an attrited motorized infantry battalion deployed in a battle formation. The enemy has artillery available, and the company has artillery and fixed/rotary wing Close Air Support (CAS) available.

STANDARD: The company must complete all preparations directed by the higher headquarters' commander NLT the time specified in the order. The company must not be surprised by the enemy. The company must decisively engage the enemy and defeat the enemy assault. The unit retains key terrain and freedom of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Commanders perform tactical planning and conduct a physical reconnaissance of each, selecting BPs based thorough analysis of likely enemy avenues of approach, maximum effective fire ranges, cover and concealment, and likely areas that the enemy will target for direct or indirect-fire suppression.
2. Positions are selected so that the BP has adequate concealed routes into and out of the position, and are large enough for the force assigned.
3. Platoons approach using covered and concealed routes.
4. Platoon halt to the rear of the BP in hide positions.
5. Scouts reconnoiter BP if not previously secured by a quartering party.
6. Guides lead platoons to positions if previously secured by a quartering party.
7. CP, mortars, and trains move to covered and concealed positions to rear of initial platoon BPs.
8. Company establishes OPs to provide security and early warning forward and to the flanks, and communication is established.
9. Coordination is made with adjacent elements for overlapping direct or indirect fires, observation, and security plans.
10. Coordination is made with adjacent elements for obstacle emplacement.
11. Coordination is made with adjacent elements for location of flank elements, routes out of BP, and scheme of maneuver of flank movements or counterattack.
12. Subsequent BPs are reconnoitered, including routes to and between them, ensuring they provide cover and concealment.
13. Fire Support Team Leader directs mortars to register and adjust final protective fires, if permitted.
14. Company fire plan developed, coordinated with adjacent units to ensure overlapping sectors of fire (direct and indirect), and forwarded to battalion within the time limit specified by the OPORD or SOP.
15. Company surveillance plan developed and coordinated with adjacent units to ensure overlapping sectors of observation.

16. Supporting engineers, if any, are directed to construct obstacles, vehicular, and individual fighting positions.
17. Subsequent BPs are prepared as time permits and adjustments to initial BPs are reported.
18. Rehearses disengagement and movement between BPs, if permitted, to ensure all personnel know the routes.
19. Scheme of maneuver of flank elements is briefed and understood by all company elements.
20. Rehearsals, preparations, and marking are completed within two hours.
21. OPs detect and report attacking enemy elements, and the company elements hold fires until the enemy reaches specific EA TRP(s).
22. The entire attacking force is engaged simultaneously with sufficient direct and indirect fire weapon systems to ensure destruction, and the attacking force is destroyed.
23. Platoons move to alternate fighting positions at the conclusion of the engagement.
24. Process captured enemy personnel and equipment as required.
25. Process friendly casualties and conduct re-supply actions as required.
26. Submit reports to higher headquarters as required.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-5303

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
3. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company

LAR-DEF-6304: Defend in company sector

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is operating tactically and is ordered to defend in sector, NLT a specified time. The enemy consists of the advance guard of a motorized infantry brigade, which is employing a forward security element and combat reconnaissance patrols. The axis of advance for the motorized infantry brigade is within the company's assigned sector. The enemy has indirect fire available, and the company has artillery and fixed/rotary wing CAS available.

STANDARD: The company main body must not be surprised by the enemy. The company must decisively engage the enemy but not become decisively engaged. The company must prevent penetration of its rear boundary for the specified time. The company must retain freedom of maneuver while retaining key terrain.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company occupies sector by using appropriate techniques of movement (such as zone reconnaissance, movement to contact, and tactical road march) to establish initial screen line.
2. Company maintains continuous surveillance of high-speed routes or avenues

- of approach into the company sector forward of initial defensive positions, as far as visibility permits.
3. Maintains surveillance of key terrain, to include target reference points.
 4. Conducts irregularly scheduled mounted and/or dismounted patrols between OPs.
 5. Conducts fire support planning to support conduct of the defense.
 6. Detects all enemy elements in the company sector, and destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements or patrols forward of the initial defensive positions.
 7. Company establishes EAs where the enemy can be canalized and is exposed to concentrated direct fire.
 8. EAs are established on the most likely routes or avenues of approach in sector.
 9. Company employs obstacles within the EAs to slow or stop the enemy's rate of advance and to force enemy units to mass and become susceptible to company fires.
 10. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes platoon BPs along the base and flanks of each EA, to include alternate and supplementary positions.
 11. Once enemy units come within range of supporting arms, the company suppresses them with indirect fire to slow the rate of advance and disrupt tactical formations.
 12. Company engages the enemy from more than one direction, massing fires to force the enemy to expose its flanks, and incorporating indirect fires to prevent withdrawal.
 13. Company moves to successive BPs to continue the defense until the time prescribed in higher headquarters' order.
 14. Company counterattacks by either fire (from an attack-by-fire position) or fire and movement. If counterattacking by fire, the ABF element maneuvers to suitable terrain and attacks elements by fire while not exposing itself to fire from follow-on enemy echelons. If the company counterattacks by fire and movement, a support by fire element engages from its BP while the assault element assaults and destroys, captures, or forces the withdrawal of enemy on the objective BP. The assault element rapidly consolidates and prepares to defend against follow-on enemy echelons.
 15. CP, mortars, and trains are located in covered and concealed positions (if available) that best support the scheme of maneuver of the delay.
 16. Casualty evacuation, vehicle recovery, and emergency re-supply is executed by the company trains as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
3. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company

LAR-DEF-6305: Delay in company sector

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is operating tactically. Friendly forces are not in contact, but an enemy attack is expected. The company receives an order to delay in sector for a specified amount of time. The enemy can attack using

air, artillery, and ground assault (mounted or dismounted). The company has artillery and fixed/rotary wing CAS available.

STANDARD: The company must delay the enemy in its sector for the time period specified. The company must maintain contact with the enemy and not become decisively engaged. The company must retain freedom of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company maintains continuous surveillance of high-speed routes or avenues of approach into the company sector forward of initial defensive positions, as far as visibility permits.
2. Company occupies its assigned sector utilizing appropriate techniques (such as zone reconnaissance, movement to contact, and tactical road march), and establishes initial screen line.
3. Maintains surveillance of key terrain, to include target reference points.
4. Conducts irregularly scheduled mounted and/or dismounted patrols between OPs.
5. Conducts fire support planning to support conduct of the delay.
6. Detects all enemy elements in the company sector, and destroys or repels enemy reconnaissance elements or patrols forward of the initial defensive positions.
7. Company prepares and marks routes and subsequent positions.
8. Conducts reconnaissance and rehearsals.
9. Prepares a series of fighting positions to fall back to, emplaces obstacles at choke points and EAs.
10. Company establishes EAs where the enemy can be canalized and is exposed to concentrated direct fire.
11. EAs are established on the most likely routes or avenues of approach in sector.
12. Company employs obstacles within the EAs to slow or stop the enemy's rate of advance and to force enemy units to mass and become susceptible to company fires.
13. Obstacles are covered with direct fire, protected from breaching attempts, and marked to allow rearward movement by platoons.
14. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant establishes platoon BPs along the base and flanks of each EA, to include alternate and supplementary positions.
15. Platoons occupy initial delay positions IAW company OPORD, and comply with all control measures and time constraints.
16. CP, mortars, and trains are located in covered and concealed positions (if available) that best support the scheme of maneuver of the delay.
17. Company establishes OPs to provide security and early warning forward and to the flanks, and communication is established.
18. Coordination is made with adjacent elements for overlapping direct or indirect fires, observation, and security plans.
19. Coordination is made with adjacent elements for obstacle emplacement.
20. OPs detect and report attacking enemy elements, and the company elements hold fires until the enemy reaches specific EA TRP(s).
21. The attacking force is engaged direct- and indirect-fire weapon systems to slow down their rate of advance and disrupt formations.
22. Company counterattacks by either fire (from an attack-by-fire position) or fire and movement. If counterattacking by fire, the ABF element maneuvers to suitable terrain and attacks elements by fire while not exposing itself to fire from follow-on enemy echelons. If the company counterattacks by fire and movement, a support by fire element engages from its BP while the assault element assaults and destroys, captures, or forces the withdrawal

- of enemy on the objective BP. The assault element rapidly consolidates and prepares to defend against follow-on enemy echelons.
23. Engaged platoons that attempt to disengage and move to subsequent BPs in order to continue the delay.
 24. Company continues to delay until it reaches the final BPs or its mission is altered by higher headquarters.
 25. Casualty evacuation, vehicle recovery, and emergency re-supply is executed by the company trains as required.
 26. Company maintains contact with the enemy and conducts follow-on operations by either moving to new positions to continue the mission, or returns to friendly units by conducting a passage of lines.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 2. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company
-

LAR-DEF-6306: Conduct a withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The enemy is engaging the company with direct fire. The battalion orders the company to withdraw or the enemy forces the company from its position. Another element may be covering the withdrawal. The enemy is battalion(-) size.

STANDARD: The company must move all personnel and equipment to the designated location NLT the time specified, or move to an area where further withdrawal is not required. All supplies that cannot be evacuated must be destroyed. The company must not be overrun or by-passed. The company must retain freedom of maneuver and offensive capability during the withdrawal.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Designated security force moves and occupies delaying positions.
2. Ensure security force positions afford good observation and fields of fire and allow for the delivery of supporting fires.
3. If under enemy pressure, concentrate all direct and indirect fires in support of disengaging forward elements.
4. Commence the withdrawal on time, signal and withdraw forward units simultaneously, or withdraw the least engaged units first.
5. Company trains are moved to a secure location in vicinity of area where the withdrawal will be completed.
6. Report initiation of withdrawal to the higher command element.
7. If under enemy pressure, withdraw prior to becoming decisively engaged.
8. If not under enemy pressure, maintain contact with enemy forces through continuous reconnaissance and surveillance.
9. If not under enemy pressure, all elements are withdrawn simultaneously at the time specified or on order of the commander.
10. Create a temporary mobility advantage over the enemy by use of fires, obstacles, or terrain.

11. Company occupies AA or designated new positions.
12. Casualty evacuation, vehicle recovery, and emergency re-supply is executed by the company trains as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. FM 3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company
-

LAR-DEF-6307: Conduct area security

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Company is given a mission to neutralize or defeat enemy operations in a specified area delineated by higher headquarters to deny the enemy the ability to influence friendly actions in a specific area or deny the enemy the use of the area for his own purposes. Purpose and intent for the operation must be given by higher headquarters. The unit may be reinforced with additional assets (translators, counter-intel assets, engineers, civil affairs, etc.)

STANDARD: The company denies the enemy the ability to influence friendly actions in a specific area and/or denies the enemy the use of the area for his own purposes. Purpose and intent for the operation are accomplished and the company maintains the initiative over the enemy. The company maintains a quick reaction force and reserve. The commander understands and is aware of his relationship with local authorities and the civilian population to insure the safety of all civilian and host nation government personnel. Commander ensures that command for the specified area is clearly defined, particularly in relation to other service components and multi-national forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The commander receives the mission to provide security for an area, clearly delineated by specific boundaries, and insures that command for the specified area is clearly defined, particularly in relation to other service components and multi-national forces.
2. The company conduct's the planning process and develops a supportable course of action, issues the order, and supervises rehearsals. The application of kinetic and non-kinetic fires is analyzed to ensure a synergistic effect is obtained.
3. The company moves into the area and screens, reconnoiters and conducts counter-reconnaissance, attacks, defends, and delays as necessary to accomplish the mission and achieve higher headquarters purpose and intent.
4. The company employs all available assets and appropriate combination of techniques to include patrols, vehicle checkpoints, cordon operations, and combined operations with host nation forces where the situation permits to deny the enemy the ability to influence friendly actions in a specific area or deny the enemy the use of the area for his own purposes.
5. The company continually develops the situation to maintain the initiative and advantage over the enemy, remaining proactive in the execution of the mission. The staff conducts continuous planning to execute follow-on

- missions within the area that are assigned by higher headquarters, and issues fragmentary orders to subordinate elements to destroy/capture enemy threats that attempt to operate or infiltrate into the area.
6. The company maintains a quick reaction force and reserve to respond to enemy contact, civil disturbance, and/or any other anticipated or unanticipated contingency.
 7. The commander must understand and be aware of his relationship with local authorities, the civilian population, multi-national forces, and other service components to insure the safety of all civilian and host nation government personnel.
 8. The company maintains a record of information and intelligence developed during operations, so it is prepared to execute a relief-in-place or battle handover with higher, adjacent, or follow-on units.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-DEF-5307

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
-

LAR-TAC-6401: Perform actions on contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is conducting a movement to contact and is assigned as the security force (advance guard). The enemy force may be lesser or greater in size or firepower and can engage the company with indirect fire, air support, or company-sized or smaller ground forces.

STANDARD: Enemy force of lesser size or firepower: The company must identify the enemy unit or position before the enemy fires on the battalion main body and destroy, capture, or force to withdraw platoon-sized or smaller units. The company must accurately and quickly report the situation to battalion. The company must retain freedom of maneuver and offensive capability. Enemy force of greater size or firepower: The company must identify the enemy unit or position before the enemy fires on the battalion main body and fix enemy forces larger than platoon size. The company must accurately and quickly report the situation to battalion. The company must retain freedom of maneuver and offensive capability. React per Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs), rehearsed battle drills, and commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company deploys and reports.
2. Platoon(s) in contact initiate reaction to contact.
3. Platoon(s) not in contact monitor contact report and continue mission in order to develop the situation within their own sector.
4. AT (TOW) section in overwatch, if there is one, initiates actions on contact.
5. AT (TOW) elements not in overwatch monitor the contact report and

- establish a firing position.
6. Mortar section monitors the contact report and establishes a firing position as directed by the Fire Support Team (FiST) Leader.
 7. Company support elements (company trains) monitor contact report and move to a covered and concealed position.
 8. Company commander develops the situation.
 9. Platoon in contact maneuvers to develop situation around the flanks of the enemy, within the platoon sector, and recommends a course of action to the commander.
 10. Mortar section establishes firing capability within two minutes if moving or 30 seconds if set, and executes any requests for fire support.
 11. Commander determines a course of action and issues fragmentary order to subordinate elements.
 12. Applicable reports are submitted to higher headquarters IAW unit SOP.
 13. Commander reports the course of action the company will execute to higher headquarters.
 14. Commander recommends a course of action, if beyond the company's capability and requiring battalion support.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-5201

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

LAR-INTL-6501: Process suspected enemy personnel and equipment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The unit is conducting tactical operations. The unit captures known or suspected enemy personnel and remains in contact with the enemy.

STANDARD: The company processes enemy prisoners of war (EPWs) in accordance with the "five-S's and T", at a minimum, EPWs are not allowed to disrupt or halt the unit's mission and are treated humanely according their rights under international law.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoons collect EPW's/detainees.
2. Receives and passes documents of immediate tactical significance directly to the battalion S2.
3. Coordinates with battalion S1 for the location to hand over EPW's/detainees.
4. Orders platoons to move EPW's to "hand over" location if necessary (such as when there are large numbers of EPW's/detainees requiring platoon action).
5. Orders EPW/detainee supervisor to move to platoon locations to pick up EPW's/detainees and hand them over to battalion S1 elements.
6. Platoons evacuate EPW's/detainees, documents, and equipment.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-INTL-5501

REFERENCES:

1. FM 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War/Civilian Internees
2. FM 34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

LAR-OPS-6502: Prepare for combat operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The company is assigned a tactical mission and must complete preparations before mission execution begins.

STANDARD: The company prepares for operations in accordance with the standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, appropriate references, and battalion commander's guidance. The company commander refines the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. Unit leaders conduct precombat checks and supervise subordinate troop leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the commander's intent. The unit conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible. The company is prepared to move into combat by the time specified in the OPORD.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Begin planning by conducting a mission analysis of higher headquarters' order and the situation through METT-TC.
2. Issue a warning order.
3. Coordinate attachments and detachments, to include briefing attachments on applicable unit Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs).
4. Arrange for reconnaissance: Use tentative scheme of maneuver and information requirements to determine priorities for reconnaissance. Determine method of reconnaissance (leader's recon, recon patrol, and aerial).
5. The unit (or designated portion) initiates movement to assembly area or attack position, as required by the warning order.
6. Make reconnaissance: Analyze information obtained; identify shortfalls; and request additional assistance from higher headquarters.
7. Conduct coordination with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
8. Complete the plan.
9. Issue the order: (SMEAC) providing ample subordinate planning and preparation time by adhering as closely as possible to the 1/3 to 2/3 rule.
10. Supervise: Conduct final mission preparations.
11. Perform pre-combat inspections (PCIs) and pre-combat checks (PCCs) on knowledge of mission critical information, maintenance and functional checks of unit and personal equipment to include: vehicles, crew-served weapons, night vision equipment, communications equipment, and NBC equipment. Ensure vehicles are marked IAW mission requirements or SOP, combat loaded, topped off, and PMCS is performed in accordance with the standard operating procedures or warning order.
12. Issue, modify, or update orders based on changes in METT-TC.

13. Monitor activities of higher, adjacent, and supporting units and report any changes in unit activity to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
-

LAR-OPS-6503: Establish and operate a command post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario and a higher headquarters order, during day and night conditions. The company is required to establish its command post as part of the tactical scenario and maintain continuous operations.

STANDARD: Unit maintains control of subordinate units, maintains ability to coordinate support and is capable of rapidly/efficiently displacing command post during day and night.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Positions the company CP where it can maintain communications with higher and subordinate units.
2. Displaces as necessary to maintain communications throughout the operation.
3. Employs the appropriate movement techniques, based on terrain, visibility, and the probability of enemy contact.
4. Establishes local security.
5. Establishes radio communications with battalion.
6. Establishes radio and/or wire communications with all company elements.
7. Conducts rehearsals of defense plans, to include occupation of fighting positions covering each possible avenue of approach.
8. Reconnoiters and prepares an alternate site for CP and as many subsequent CP sites as the mission requires.
9. Rehearses movement to alternate and subsequent CP sites.
10. Mobile CP: Moves on covered and concealed routes to the rear of company combat elements.
11. Mobile CP: Halts in concealed, terrain-masked positions with or to the rear of company overwatch or support-by-fire element.
12. Mobile CP: Occupies vehicle positions and maintains local security through weapon orientation and crew sectors of observation.
13. Mobile CP: Maintains radio communications with the battalion CP and subordinate units throughout the operation.
14. Mobile CP: Conducts visual and map reconnaissance of terrain forward, to the rear, and to the flanks of the unit's position and selects tentative, alternate, and subsequent CP sites.
15. Monitors company and battalion radio nets (company command and battalion command) and enter the battalion administrative/logistics.
16. Maintains an operations log and operations map and continuously update the locations of subordinate and adjacent units.
17. Reports the unit location when required.
18. Records and plots all spot reports and forward them to battalion CP.

19. Prepares and submits all reports in accordance with the unit SOP.
20. Forwards battalion orders and other critical information to the command group.
21. Distributes NBC and air attack warnings to all company elements.
22. CP group defends the command post.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 3. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
 4. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
-

LAR-FSPT-6601: Conduct fire support planning

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario, scheme of maneuver, higher headquarters' fire support plan or fire support guidance, supported by (actual or simulated) air, artillery, Naval Surface Fire Support and/or mortars, appropriate maps, FiST battle board and target identification/acquisition devices.

STANDARD: Fire support plan supports the scheme of maneuver/concept of operations while safeguarding forces against fratricide, and the plan is coordinated with higher, adjacent, and supporting agencies.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establishes mortar, artillery, close air support (CAS), and naval gunfire (NGF) targets, groups, and/or series of targets.
2. Establishes a schedule of fires if applicable.
3. Establishes fire support coordination measures as necessary.
4. Establishes target priorities for each fire support system.
5. Integrates all fire support and facilitate unit maneuver by destroying, diverting, delaying, limiting, disrupting, or obscuring known or suspected enemy positions.
6. Plans targets on known, suspected, or likely enemy locations.
7. Plans targets on prominent terrain features.
8. Plans targets from the LD to the LOA/objective.
9. Plans targets along the axis of advance.
10. Plans targets to the flanks of avenues of approach.
11. Designates target number.
12. Determines duration of smoke needed for obscuration.
13. Plans alternative smoke targets.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 2. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
 3. MCWP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
 4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

LAR-FSPT-6602: Conduct Fire Support Team (FiST) operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario to include the company commander's scheme of maneuver, higher headquarters fire support guidance/plan, fire support agencies (actual or simulated), communications equipment, and appropriate maps, FiST battle board, and target identification/acquisition devices. During daylight and limited visibility operations.

STANDARD: Execute fires to achieve effective combined arms employment in support of company commander's scheme of maneuver/concept of operations during both daylight and limited visibility.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. FiST leader orients team to targets, briefs enemy situation.
2. FiST conducts battle drill per unit SOP: team determines target(s) location(s), direction, distance, and elevation.
3. FiST confirms friendly position(s) and status of fire support agencies to include priority targets and non-organic assets available.
4. Report lead trace/position of friendly units to supporting agencies/higher headquarters and conduct initial coordination for fires.
5. Begin the initial adjust fire process/requests for fires in support of fire planning.
6. Develop plan for fires based on scheme of maneuver, EFSTs, assets available, and commander's guidance.
7. Coordinate and deconflict fire plan with higher, adjacent, and supporting agencies.
8. FiST conducts rehearsal of fire support plan per unit SOP.
9. Execute fire support coordination based on the plan and in accordance with unit SOPs and the references.
10. Confirm supporting agency fires are delivered in the required manner and are having the appropriate effect. Adjustments are made as required.
11. Establish and maintain coordination with maneuver commanders and supporting agencies to continue, shift, or cease fires as required.
12. Report effects of fires to company commander and pass effects of fires to supporting agencies when the mission is completed. Record as required.
13. FiST prepares for follow-on missions/tasks.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
2. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
3. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support

LAR-NBC-6603: React to a chemical/biological attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: The company is at MOPP-2. The unit is moving or halted. Enemy presents a chemical or biological threat. Personnel hear an NBC alarm or are ordered to mask.

STANDARD: Company personnel take protective measures (dons MOPP-4) in required time limit and take immediate actions based on the tactical

situation. Affected elements initiate reporting procedures. NBC monitor survey teams take appropriate actions.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Company reacts to the sound of chemical agent alarm or recognizes the indicators for chemical/biological attack.
2. Protect exposed equipment and supplies.
3. Monitor the area by testing with detector kits.
4. Use prevention procedures such as marking contaminated areas.
5. Reestablishes chain of command and communications.
6. Receives company status and passes to higher headquarters.
7. Identifies, treats, prepares, and evacuates casualties.
8. Decontaminates KIAs before medical evacuation.
9. Wraps, marks, and evacuates KIAs to designated collection point.
10. Company resumes mission.
11. Company replenishes chemical defense equipment and supplies.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-4 NBC Protection
2. FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination
3. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook
4. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
5. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

LAR-NBC-6604: Cross a chemically contaminated area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: The company is operating tactically and encounters a chemically contaminated area. Time and the mission dictate that the area cannot be bypassed. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARD: The company must use the best route across the area based on METT-TC. There must be no chemical casualties as a result of the crossing.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Movement of unit into area is reported to battalion headquarters.
2. Monitor/Survey teams conduct NBC surveys as directed by Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs).
3. When the contaminated area is detected, the company submits an appropriate report to higher headquarters and increases to the appropriate MOPP level (MOPP 4 for chemical and biological contamination).
4. Adjust formations to increase intervals between individuals and units as the tactical situation permits.

5. Avoid puddles, overhanging branches, and bushes as much as possible.
6. Maintain security while moving through the contaminated area.
7. Move through contaminated area as rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
8. Submit reports in accordance with unit Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs).
9. Drop expendable covering at the edge of the contaminated area.
10. Upon exiting the contaminated area by at least 500 meters, unit conducts a security halt.
11. Check for obvious contamination.
12. Conduct immediate decon on any contaminated areas. Treat and evacuate any casualties.
13. If the mission permits, company completes operational decontamination.
14. Update reports with new information obtained during the crossing.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-NBC-5601

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
3. FM 3-4 NBC Protection
4. FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination
5. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook
6. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
7. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

LAR-NBC-6605: Conduct monitor survey operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 18 months

CONDITION: The company encounters a suspected contaminated area and conducts monitor/survey operations.

STANDARD: The presence of a chemical or biological agent is identified and company personnel assume MOPP-4 in time to prevent casualties. Appropriate report submitted to battalion immediately.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Trained monitor/survey teams monitor the environment with a chemical agent detection equipment (chemical agent monitor/chemical agent detector kit), radiological detection equipment and visual observation.
2. Sound the alarm if chemical agent or biological agent is suspected.
3. Report the results of the monitor/survey operations.
4. Mark contaminated area.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-4 NBC Protection
2. FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination
3. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook

4. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
5. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

LAR-NBC-6606: Conduct MOPP gear exchange

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 18 months

CONDITION: The unit is in MOPP-4 and the gear is contaminated. Threat condition is not likely.

STANDARD: MOPP gear is exchanged without further spread of contamination.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Contaminated protective clothing is removed without transfer of contamination.
2. Individuals put on new protective clothing using the "Buddy System".
3. Conduct local/spot decontamination, during the exchange, anytime contamination is expected.
4. Maintain seal on field protective mask.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-4 NBC Protection
2. FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination
3. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook
4. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
5. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

LAR-LOG-6901: Conduct tactical logistics

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario that requires logistical sustainment and/or support, either as an independent unit or as part of a larger unit, the company conducts logistics planning, organizes organic combat service support, and conducts resupply operations.

STANDARD: The unit coordinates requirements for logistical support and distributes sustainment to meet mission requirements; ensures the proper, secure, and timely use of supplies and equipment; and reports logistical status per unit SOPs. All component tasks are accomplished.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The unit determines the logistical requirements based on higher headquarters' requirements and in accordance with the mission.
2. Develops a logistics plan to include: establishing delivery times or supply points based on technique of distribution, identifying combat load and operational equipment requirements for the unit, procedures for

- maintenance and medical services, a timeline for execution, priority of support, and inspection criteria and location.
3. The unit coordinates logistical support in a timely manner to include: required classes of supply, method and location of distribution, motor transportation requirements, medical service support, and maintenance needs.
 4. Conducts resupply, maintenance, and organizes service support in a secure manner, per the timeline, and to the standard and priority identified in the plan.
 5. Reports logistic status to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 2. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support
-

INF-AMPH-6901: Prepare for amphibious operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The unit has been assigned to conduct an amphibious operation (e.g., assault, raid, etc.).

STANDARD: Unit conducts all planning necessary to facilitate amphibious operations. The unit conducts all planning necessary for embarkation, movement, debarkation and re-embarkation from assault shipping.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis based on METT-TSL.
2. Issue guidance to subordinates.
3. Coordinate planning with higher in order to determine landing site(s), landing force, and objectives.
4. Brief the readiness of the unit to higher.
5. Brief higher on overall concept of operations to include the task organization, load plan, scheme of maneuver, and fire support plan.
6. Ensure planning occurs parallel with all elements during the development of the scheme of maneuver, fire support plan, and landing plan.
7. Develop the operation order to include embarkation plan.
8. Compile manifests for movement, and submit to higher.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-3 Marine Infantry Battalion
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
 3. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
 4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
-

INF-MED-6430: Process Casualties

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The unit is conducting tactical operations. Enemy fire, direct or indirect, has been received in the position area causing casualties.

STANDARD: Unit casualties are identified, consolidated (as required) to a central collection or ambulatory exchange point, triaged, treated, reported to higher headquarters, and evacuated as required in a timely fashion. Unit is able to continue mission while evacuating casualties.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Injured Marine applies self-aid.
2. Marines apply buddy aid to the injured. Individuals demonstrate first aid knowledge in the treatment of fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
3. Evacuate WIA and KIA to Casualty Collection Point (CCP) using designated carrying parties or litter teams, using covered and concealed casualty evacuation routes.
4. Unit corpsmen conduct triage at CCP to maximize number of survivors. Establish evacuation priorities.
5. Unit coordinates with higher headquarters for evacuation (ground, air, etc.) if required.
6. Begin casualty reporting and tracking immediately after an individual(s) is wounded, starting at the lowest unit level and terminating at higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
2. MCRP 3-02G First Aid

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Assault Support Aircraft
2. Suitable landing zone
3. Tactical vehicle(s)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Evaluator will tag casualties. Marines who are tagged with incapacitating wounds drop where "hit." Marines tagged as incapacitated, do not move under their own power, but rely on other the carry them.
2. This task may be trained to standard in garrison.

INF-OOTW-6703: Conduct Non-Combatant Evacuation Operations (NEO)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order to participate in or conduct non-combatant evacuation operation which may include civil disturbance operations such as augmenting local security forces, protecting key installations, riot control, removing unlawful obstructions, or dispersing an unlawful assembly.

STANDARD: Order issued to all participating personnel. The company safely evacuates designated personnel to amphibious shipping of another safe haven.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination with battalion and supporting/adjacent units.
2. Task organize the unit for security and/or Evacuation Control Center (ECC) operations.
3. Issue orders to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
4. Conduct rehearsals, subordinate unit back briefs, and pre-combat checks/inspections.
5. Conduct movement to the objective/evacuation site via ground (motorized or mechanized) or air (heliborne or fixed wing assets).
6. Conduct security and/or ECC operations.
7. React to civil disturbance, enemy action, or reports of evacuees at other locations in accordance with unit SOPs briefed and rehearsed prior to mission execution.
8. Conduct retrograde via ground or air.
9. Debrief unit actions and reaction to enemy contact and other contingencies.
10. Report after-action observations to higher and adjacent headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. MCDP 1-0 Marine Corps Operations

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces
Facility Code 17760 MOUT Assault Course (MAC)
Facility Code 17962 MOUT Collective Training Facility (Small)

UNITS/PERSONNEL:

1. MOUT facility/MOUT Training area
2. Role players (Evacuees)
3. Opposing Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

Weapons:

M16 Series 5.56mm Service Rifle/M4 Series Carbine
M240G 7.62mm Medium Machinegun
M249 5.56mm Light Machinegun - Squad Automatic Weapon

INF-OOTW-6704: Conduct a Tactical Recovery of Aircraft and Personnel (TRAP)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a mission to recover an aircraft or personnel in a permissive or non-permissive environment. During day or night, with or without supporting units (Assault support aircraft, engineers, CSSE, MWSS, EOD)

STANDARD: Recovery of sensitive items and or aircrew. Sensitive items that cannot be transported are destroyed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination with Battalion and adjacent/supporting units.
2. Task organize the TRAP force.
3. Conduct rehearsals, subordinate unit backbriefs, and inspections prior to departure.
4. Coordinate with ground and aviation headquarters operating within the AO, for situational awareness on current ground and aviation operations.
5. Conduct coordination to collect common communication channels such as the guard frequency, and ensure communication equipment compatibility with aviation units with the AO (UHF/VHF/SATCOM).
6. Coordinate with likely supporting units in advance for participation in recovery operations (Engineers, Tanks, LAR, AAVs, CSSE, MWSS, etc).
7. Coordinate with reinforcements (QRF).
8. Conduct movement to objective area.
9. Conduct security, search, and recovery operations.
10. React to enemy actions.
11. Withdraw to friendly lines or other safe haven.
12. Debrief and report to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. JP 1-02 DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms
2. MCRP 5-12C Marine Corps Supplement to the Department of Defense Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A080 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Single	
AA12 Cartridge, 9mm FX Red Marking	
AA21 Cartridge, 9mm FX Blue Marking	
A075 Cartridge, 5.56mm Blank M200 Linked	
B505 Cartridge, 40mm Red Star Parachute M	
B535 Cartridge, 40mm White Star Parachute	
A111 Cartridge, 7.62mm Blank M82 Linked	
B504 Cartridge, 40mm Green Star Parachute	

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17410 Maneuver/Training Area, Light Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL:

1. Maneuver/Training area
2. Role Players (downed aircrew)
3. Opposing Forces

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

Weapons:

M16 Series 5.56mm Service Rifle/M4 Series Carbine
M203 40mm Grenade Launcher
M240G 7.62mm Medium Machinegun
M249 5.56mm Light Machinegun - Squad Automatic Weapon

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE PLATOON

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	5000	5-2
EVENT CODING	5001	5-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	5002	5-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	5003	5-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	5004	5-4
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	5005	5-5

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE PLATOON

5000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level Light Armor Reconnaissance unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "LAR" indicating that the event is for units in the Light Armor Reconnaissance Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Platoon level are:

DEF - Defensive Operations	INTL - Intelligence Operations
LOG - Logistics	MNVR - Maneuver
MOBL - Mobility	NBC - Nuclear, Biological & Chemical
OFF - Offensive Operations	OPS - Staff Functions
PAT - Patrolling	TAC - Other Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Prepares for, reacts to, and participates in operations in a nuclear, biological, and chemical environment.
2. Prepares for and conducts tactical movement.
3. Conducts a passage of lines as a stationary unit and as a moving unit.
4. Prepares for and conducts cordon and search operations.
5. Conducts actions on contact and continuing and immediate actions.
6. Conducts a relief in place.
7. Conducts overwatch and support another unit by fire.
8. Participates and conducts offensive operations, defensive operations and security operations.
9. Participates in and conducts operations in urban environments.
10. Constructs and breaches obstacles.
11. Prepares for and conducts platoon level offensive, defensive and security operations.
12. Processes enemy prisoners of war.
13. Executes platoon formations.
14. Executes platoon fire and movement.
15. Conducts route reconnaissance and participates in zone and area reconnaissance operations.
16. Prepares for, plans, and executes platoon level offensive and defensive operations to include attack, raid, defend, displace, screen, ambush, disengage and consolidate.
17. Prepares and submits platoon fire plan sketches.
18. Conducts precombat inspections.
19. Conducts battle tracking and reporting.
20. Participates in Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW).
21. Conducts checkpoint operations

5004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
LAR-MNVR-5101		Perform a zone reconnaissance	5-5
LAR-MNVR-5102		Perform an area reconnaissance	5-5
LAR-MNVR-5103		Perform a route reconnaissance	5-6
LAR-MNVR-5104		Conduct a tactical movement	5-7
LAR-MNVR-5105		Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques	5-8
LAR-MNVR-5106		Reconnoiter an obstacle and a bypass	5-9
LAR-MNVR-5107		Perform a passage of lines	5-9
LAR-MNVR-5108		Assist a passage of lines	5-10
LAR-MNVR-5109		Conduct a relief in place	5-11
LAR-MOBL-5110		Conduct an obstacle breach/forcible entry	5-13
LAR-MOBL-5111		Conduct Improvised Explosive Device (IED) patrol	5-14
LAR-MOBL-5112		Conduct convoy security operations	5-14
LAR-OFF-5201		Conduct a movement to contact	5-15
LAR-OFF-5202		Support an attack	5-16
LAR-OFF-5203		Conduct Raid	5-16
LAR-OFF-5204		Conduct anti-armor ambush	5-17
LAR-OFF-5205		Conduct operations in an urban area	5-18
LAR-OFF-5206		Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment	5-20
LAR-OFF-5207		Conduct a cordon and search	5-20
LAR-DEF-5301		Act as a quartering party for an assembly area	5-21
LAR-DEF-5302		Conduct a screen	5-22
LAR-DEF-5303		Establish a platoon battle position	5-23
LAR-DEF-5304		Defend an Urban Area	5-23
LAR-DEF-5305		Occupy an assembly area	5-25
LAR-DEF-5306		Emplace/Retrieve a hasty protective minefield	5-26
LAR-DEF-5307		Provide security for an EOD team	5-27
LAR-TAC-5401		Execute actions on contact	5-27
LAR-TAC-5402		Conduct checkpoint operations	5-28
LAR-PAT-5403		Conduct a dismounted patrol	5-28
LAR-INTL-5501		Process known or suspected enemy personnel	5-29
LAR-OPS-5502		Prepare for combat operations	5-30
LAR-NBC-5601		Cross a chemically contaminated area	5-31
LAR-LOG-5901		Conduct medical evacuations	5-32

5005. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

LAR-MNVR-5101: Perform a zone reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: For additional information, reference FM 3-20.98 Scout Platoon for additional tasks associated with this event.

CONDITION: The platoon is ordered to conduct a zone reconnaissance. The platoon will be operating in an area occupied by enemy forces.

STANDARD: The platoon must complete all assigned tasks in the order and applicable component tasks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Reconnoiter all terrain within the zone.
2. Inspect and classify all bridges in zone.
3. Locate fords and crossing sites near all bridges in the zone.
4. Inspect and classify all over passes under passes and culverts in zone.
5. Within capability, locate all minefields and other obstacles in the zone, reduce or breach them and clear and mark lanes through the obstacles.
6. Locate bypasses around built up areas, obstacles and contaminated areas.
7. Find and report all threat forces in the zone.
8. Report reconnaissance information.
9. Ensure enemy forces within the zone are reported.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-4102

LAR-SURV-4501

LAR-MNVR-4101

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5102: Perform an area reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. The platoon will be operating in an area occupied by enemy forces.

STANDARD: The platoon is ordered to conduct an area reconnaissance. The platoon will be operating in an area occupied by enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Reconnoiter all terrain within the area.
2. Inspect and classify all bridges in the area.
3. Locate fords or crossings near all bridges in the area.

4. Inspect and classify all bridges, over passes and under passes in the area.
5. Within capability, locate all minefields and other obstacles in the area, reduce or breach them, and clear and mark lanes.
6. Locate bypasses around built up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
7. Find and report all threat forces within the area.
8. Report reconnaissance information.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-4102

LAR-SURV-4501

LAR-MNVR-4101

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5103: Perform a route reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: For additional information, reference FM 3-20.98 Scout Platoon for additional tasks associated with this event.

CONDITION: The platoon is ordered to conduct a route reconnaissance. The platoon is operating in an area occupied by enemy forces.

STANDARD: The platoon collects and reports information on decisive and key terrain and threat forces (squad size or greater), and reconnoiters the assigned route and lateral routes. The platoon reports all route information and retains freedom to maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon deploys utilizing appropriate formation and techniques of movement specified in operation order.
2. Platoon conducts reconnaissance.
3. Use maximum reconnaissance force forward.
4. Orient on the reconnaissance objective.
5. Report all information rapidly and accurately.
6. Retain freedom to maneuver.
7. Platoon collects information about the route and adjacent terrain.
8. Determine trafficability along the route.
9. Locate and evaluate all bridges, fords and/or crossing sites along the route.
10. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
11. Locate and evaluate all underpasses and tunnels.
12. Identify and evaluate all restrictive curves and steep grades along the route.
13. Identify and evaluate all other restrictive passages.
14. Locate and evaluate bypasses of all restrictive passages.
15. Complete and confirm map reconnaissance by visual inspection of the route and adjacent terrain.
16. Reconnoiter terrain that dominates along the route.
17. Reconnoiter all built-up areas along the route.

18. Reconnoiter all routes effecting reconnaissance.
19. Determine existence and extent of NBC contamination along the route, if required.
20. Platoon identifies threat forces that can influence the route.
21. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant prepares a route classification overlay.
22. Depict beginning and end coordinates of the route, restrictions to traffic flow, sharp curves and series of curves, level grade railroad crossings, length and width of constrictions, percentage of slope on steep grades, and overall capability of the route.
23. Report terrain information by submitting route classification overlay.
24. Report terrain information by submitting obstacle, bypass, and ford reports.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-MNVR-4102 LAR-SURV-4501 LAR-MNVR-4101

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FMFM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification

LAR-MNVR-5104: Conduct a tactical movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an LAR platoon and an appropriate operations order, the platoon must move from one location to another along a designated route. Threat condition is probable.

STANDARD: The platoon must cross the SP at the +/- time, speed and formation specified in the OPORD. The platoon must maintain 360-degree security during the movement and arrive at the designated destination without personnel or equipment loss.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination with battalion and supporting/adjacent units.
2. Issue order to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
3. Conduct rehearsals, subordinate unit backbriefs, and inspections prior to departure.
4. Follow the prescribed route, adhering to the briefed order of movement, march interval, and rate of march.
5. Use prescribed catch-up speed to close with vehicles in front to reestablish march interval.
6. Control movement formations and techniques by radio.
7. Perform maintenance checks on vehicles during movement execution IAW unit SOP.
8. Personnel in each vehicle maintain 360 degree observation around the vehicle.
9. During halts, vehicles pull to the side of the road, maintaining the prescribed interval, and establish local security.

10. Inform unit commander of all breakdowns.
11. Personnel from disabled vehicle establish local security and provide guide(s) to direct traffic until recovery element with security arrives.
12. Designated recovery element with security attempts to repair disabled vehicles.
13. If the vehicle cannot be repaired attempt to recover with organic towing or trailering capability. If the vehicle cannot be recovered by the convoy, all personnel, communications equipment, and essential/sensitive cargo are transferred to another vehicle(s) in the convoy. Report location of abandoned vehicle for follow-on recovery elements.
14. React to enemy contact in accordance with platoon SOPs briefed and rehearsed prior to departure.
15. During the movement, report unit actions and reaction to enemy contact.
16. Report observations to higher and adjacent headquarters.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-MNVR-2101

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5105: Control tactical vehicle formations and movement techniques

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an LAR platoon and an operations order, the platoon must move in tactical formations and utilize movement techniques that are appropriate to the situation.

STANDARD: The platoon must chose the correct formation and movement techniques based off of the METT-TC.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon determines appropriate movement techniques and formations based off of METT-TC.
2. Platoon demonstrates proficiency in the following movement techniques: traveling, traveling overwatch, and bounding overwatch.
3. Platoon demonstrates proficiency in the following movement formations: column, staggered column, vee, and line formations.
4. Platoon executes herringbone or coil formation when it must establish local security during a halt.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-MNVR-2101 0313-MNVR-2101

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5106: Reconnoiter an obstacle and a bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting reconnaissance operations and encounters an obstacle that impedes movement. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARD: The platoon must reconnoiter the obstacle, locate any bypasses, and provide necessary information to higher headquarters in an obstacle report per the unit SOP.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit discovering obstacle deploy in an overwatch position and report.
2. Platoon commander reports obstacle to higher headquarters (SALUTE).
3. An element moves to a position overwatching the obstacle.
4. Platoon establishes security and locates a bypass.
5. Locate bypass on either side of obstacle.
6. Move to far (threat) side of obstacle and establish forward OPs.
7. Develop bypass report while moving to establish OP.
8. One section moves to obstacle and conducts local security.
9. Remaining section moves to the flanks to provide flank security.
10. Scouts reconnoiter the obstacle and prepare reports.
11. Move to the near side of the obstacle.
12. Reconnoiter obstacle for trip wires, mines, and other booby traps.
13. Determine if the obstacle can be breached or cleared with organic assets.
14. Receive bypass reports from section leaders.
15. Report results of reconnaissance to platoon commander.
16. Platoon commander reports results and submits recommendations to higher headquarters.
17. Send report via designated means.
18. Send recommendation to use bypass around obstacle, no assistance required.
19. Send recommendation there is no bypass around obstacle, assistance required.
20. Send recommendation there is a difficult bypass around obstacle, assistance required.
21. Platoon prepares to continue mission.
22. Sections pick up local security at obstacle and return to forward OP.
23. Platoon bypasses obstacle and prepares to resume mission.
24. If bypass is not possible, platoon provides overwatch and local security of obstacle until arrival of breaching force.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5107: Perform a passage of lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon receives an operations order or fragmentary order complete with graphics. They are to conduct a forward or rearward passage of lines as part of a company operation. The platoon commander is ordered to act as the liaison officer for the passing unit, or is thoroughly briefed by the company commander on the conduct of the passage. Threat contact during the passage is not likely. If selected as the liaison officer, the platoon commander completes the coordination and is prepared to brief the company commander on the conduct of the passage.

STANDARD: The passage must be conducted at the time specified in the order and it must result in the platoon's passage through the stationary unit with no compromise of security and no casualties caused by fratricide. Upon completion of the passage, the platoon must be ready to continue its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander/section leader makes coordination with the stationary unit.
2. Coordination remains the same whether the platoon is conducting a forward or rearward passage of lines.
3. Coordination includes the following: identification and types of unit(s) to pass; time(s) of departure and reentry; number of vehicles and types; mission of units and scheme of maneuver; battle handover line location; presence of NBC contamination; fire support plan; enemy situation; friendly locations (day and night) to include OPs and patrol routes; contact point, coordination points, and dismount point (if required); passage points, lanes, and routes; obstacle locations and types; assembly areas or attack position; combat support and combat service support locations for emergency support provided by the stationary unit; recognition signals; CEOI information.
4. The platoon/section conducts the passage of lines.
5. The platoon/section arrives at the designated contact point at the time specified displaying the coordinated recognition signals.
6. The unit picks up the stationary force guides, moves to the passage points, and continues to move on the designated passage lane without halting.
7. A platoon/section representative moves to the contact point(s) and counts platoon/section vehicles through each point to the passage point(s).
8. The platoon/section moves rapidly through the passage lanes to an assembly area or to a new overwatch position.
9. The platoon/section avoids stationary force obstacles.
10. A platoon/section representative at the passage at the passage point tells guide when all elements have passed.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5108: Assist a passage of lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is stationary in a hasty or deliberate battle position. The platoon receives an operations order or fragmentary order to assist the passage of another unit through its position. Threat contact is not likely. The passing unit is either to the rear of the platoon and will pass forward, or it is fighting a defensive battle forward of the platoon and will pass rearward and hand the battle over to the platoon.

STANDARD: The platoon must assist the passing unit so that no personnel or equipment losses are inflicted due to fratricide, and no security breaches occur. Coordination is made in accordance with the unit plan and SOP.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander requests information about the passing unit from the S-3, if it is not covered in the OPOD/FRAGO.
2. Identify composition by type and number of vehicles of passing unit.
3. Identify passage points and passage lanes (primary and alternate).
4. Identify recognition signals and guide activities.
5. Identify location of attack position (forward passage) or assembly area (rearward passage) to be occupied by the passing force.
6. Identify CEOI information.
7. Identify moving unit arrival time at contact points.
8. Identify battle handover procedures (rearward passage only).
9. Identify threat situation.
10. Identify barriers, minefields, and obstacles.
11. The platoon deploys to assist the passage.
12. Establish contact points and/or passage points if so directed by higher headquarters.
13. Establish overwatch positions.
14. Reconnoiter and mark routes for passing unit.
15. Man obstacles the platoon is responsible to execute.
16. The platoon guides passing units.
17. Guide the passing unit along specified routes to the designated location.
18. Report completion of the passage.
19. Close passage lanes through the obstacle.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-5109: Conduct a relief in place

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting offensive or defensive operations as part of a company. The company is ordered to conduct a relief in place as either the relieving or relieved unit. The incoming and outgoing company commanders have coordinated for the relief. The platoon commander receives an operations order or fragmentary order to assist the relief in place by relieving, or being relieved, by his counterpart platoon from the other company. The relief may be conducted either to maximize security or to maximize speed of completion. Threat contact is not likely during the relief.

STANDARD: The relief must be completed by the time of "change of responsibility" specified in the order, and it must not compromise the operation to threat observers or intelligence collectors, either visually or by radio traffic. Continuous observation of the platoon's sector of fire (defensive reliefs) must be achieved and there must be no friendly casualties as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine the time the relief in place is to begin and end, and conduct reconnaissance if time permits.
2. Determine method for conducting the relief in place.
3. Verify control measures.
4. Determine when responsibility will change.
5. Identify OPSEC considerations and deception plan.
6. Verify location of and transfer procedures for obstacles.
7. Determine contingency plans in case of enemy attack during the relief in place.
8. Determine responsibilities and requirements for transfer of supplies and equipment.
9. Platoon commander coordinates linkup with relieving/relieved unit if the commander has not completed coordination.
10. Move to the designated contact point.
11. Coordinate time that the responsibility for the BP/sector will pass to the relieving unit.
12. Coordinate time, method, and sequence of relief in place.
13. Coordinate procedures for use of guides.
14. The unit being relieved provides guides to each vehicle of the relieving platoon.
15. Coordinate routes and control measures into and out of positions.
16. Coordinate graphics depicting primary, alternate, and supplementary fighting positions.
17. Coordinate handover procedures for artillery and AD.
18. Fire support is normally provided by the relieved unit until the relieving units accepts responsibility for the BP.
19. Coordinate actions on contact.
20. Coordinate sketch cards and fire plans for all positions (hard copy and/or digital versions, as applicable).
21. Coordinate procedures for transfer of supplies and wire lines (if necessary).
22. Coordinate procedures for turnover of obstacles.
23. Exchange communications data (including digital link-up information).
24. Platoon prepares for the relief in place as the relieving unit.
25. The platoon changes frequencies on all radios to the frequencies of the relieved unit and verifies digital communications message routing matrices have been correctly converted.
26. Initiate movement.
27. Occupy preliminary positions in preparation for conducting the relief in place and determine the method of relief.
28. Platoon commander directs platoon to prepare for relief in place as the relieved unit, and exchanges required information with the relieving platoon commander.
29. Direct platoon to maintain communications as determined in the coordination or as specified in the OPORD.
30. Identify and prepare equipment for quick exchange with the relieving unit.

31. Report to the company commander that preparations for the relief in place are complete, using digital communications or FM communications.
32. Meet the relieved unit at the designated contact points.
33. Follow guides to positions in the determined sequence of relief.
34. Assume relieved unit's mission when entire platoon is in position.
35. Platoon performs the relief in place as the relieved unit.
36. Send guides to designated contact points.
37. Guide relieving units to positions in the determined sequence of relief.
38. Transfer responsibility for mission when entire relieving unit is in position.
39. Report completion of relief in place to the company commander, using digital or FM communications
40. Move to a predetermined rally point to account for vehicles/personnel.
41. Move to designated assembly area.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MOBL-5110: Conduct an obstacle breach/forcible entry

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 8 months

CONDITION: The platoon is performing tactical operations when it is presented with an obstacle that it cannot be bypassed. Breaching element is equipped with the proper tools and ammunition to conduct the breach.

STANDARD: The unit reduces the obstacle, marks the breach site and continues the mission with minimal delay.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The unit leader reports the obstacle to higher headquarters.
2. The lead element (individuals) occupies the best available position to overwatch the obstacle. The unit maintains security.
3. The lead unit conducts reconnaissance for enemy positions.
4. Conduct leader's reconnaissance and designate a breach point.
5. Employ organic and/or supporting fires to suppress the enemy.
6. Obscure the breach site from enemy observation.
7. Breaching element moves to the breach point using available cover and concealment and secures the breach site.
8. The breaching element inspects the obstacle for booby traps and marks booby traps for reduction.
9. The obstacle/barrier is reduced.
10. Destroy/remove or mark unexploded mines and booby traps in the breach lane/site.
11. The breach element clears the breach lane, conducts a limited assault/security beyond the breach, and conducts a search for mines and booby traps on the far side. These are removed/destroyed or marked.
12. Mark the footpath to the breach, the breach lane, and the footpath beyond the obstacle. If breach will be used at night (or limited visibility), mark accordingly.

13. Remaining elements of the unit move through the breach lane.
14. Report the location of the breach to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-250 Explosives and Demolitions
 2. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
 3. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
 4. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
 5. TM 9-1375-213-12 Demolition Materials
-

LAR-MOBL-5111: Conduct Improvised Explosive Device (IED) patrol

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: LAR platoon is tasked with conducting an Improvised Explosive Device (IED) patrol along a designated route or area. EOD support is available.

STANDARD: All Improvised Explosive Devices (IED) along the assigned route or zone have been identified, reported to higher and reduced if within unit's capability.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon issues fragmentary order that includes the speed, formations and current TTP's and unit SOP's that will be used in the conduct of the patrol.
2. Platoon completes the patrol without loss or damage to vehicles or personnel.
3. Once an IED is located, the platoon completes appropriate reports to higher headquarters and requests for EOD support.
4. Platoon conducts the patrol and is successful in locating all Improvised Explosive Devices along the designated route or area.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MOBL-5112: Conduct convoy security operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given an LAR platoon and an operations order or FRAGO, the platoon is tasked with providing security for convoy or combat logistics patrol.

STANDARD: The platoon makes coordination with the supported commander and makes recommendations on the employment of his vehicles. Platoon provides security and employs its vehicles in accordance with the operations order.

Platoon maintains communications with higher headquarters. Platoon ensures safe and timely arrival of the supported unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct coordination with escorted unit.
2. Platoon issues operations or fragmentary order.
3. Platoon conducts link up with escorted element.
4. Platoon conducts escort mission.
5. Platoon conducts actions at halts as directed by escort element commander, order or based on METT-TC.
6. Platoon properly executes actions on contact.
7. Platoon reports completion of escort mission to higher headquarters.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-MNVR-2101

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-OFF-5201: Conduct a movement to contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The unit is ordered to conduct a movement to conduct, or the unit leader decides, based on his estimate of the situation, to do so. Enemy location and dispositions are unknown.

STANDARD: The platoon moves at a speed and formation appropriate with METT-TC until enemy forces are located. Once contact is made the platoon must gain and maintain contact with the enemy.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Coordinate with adjacent and supporting units throughout the operation.
2. Begin the movement on time and in the specified formation.
3. The platoon uses movement techniques and formations that are appropriate for the terrain and probability of enemy contact.
4. Coordinate the delivery of fire support (direct and indirect), according to plan and in a responsive manner.
5. Use and report control measures that provide control for elements and fires, and are appropriate to the enemy situation and terrain.
6. Leaders are able to give their positions/location.
7. Conduct resupply and recovery operations as required.
8. Gain and maintain contact with the enemy.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-OFF-2202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FM 3-21.9 SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
-

LAR-OFF-5202: Support an attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: An LAR platoon is in direct support of a company sized unit and is directed to provide supporting fires for moving (supported) friendly elements. Threat contact is expected.

STANDARD: The platoon must comply with the supported commander's order and intent. The platoon assumes a position from which it can provide supporting fires for the supported element. The platoon suppresses and, within its capabilities, destroys threat elements that could effect accomplishment of the supported elements mission. The platoon maintains situational awareness and communications with the supported force and warns of its lapses in overwatch coverage.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Issue fragmentary order.
2. Direct platoon to occupy designated support by fire position.
3. Platoon maneuvers and occupies support by fire position.
4. Platoon acquires, suppresses, and or destroys identified threat elements.
5. Platoon prevents threat forces from placing accurate fires against the supported force.
6. Shifts or ceases fires as necessary to suppress or destroy identified threat elements.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
-

LAR-OFF-5203: Conduct Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

CONDITION: LAR platoon is given a mission to conduct a raid.

STANDARD: The LAR platoon accomplishes all assigned tasks in the order and all applicable component events.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct raid planning and organize for the raid and arrange for a planned withdrawal.
2. Conduct a reconnaissance of the objective.

3. Assign each element a withdrawal plan.
4. Ensure security elements occupy designated positions to the flanks and rear of the unit and along high-speed avenues of approach to the objective.
5. Move support element to a covered and concealed position from which fire can be placed on the objective.
6. Move assault element to the designated assault position. The assault position should be close enough to the objective for immediate assault, if detected before the planned assault.
7. Plan indirect, suppressive or obscuration fires on known and suspected enemy position(s).
8. Ensure security element prevents enemy entry into or escape from the objective area.
9. Ensure assault element fights through, consolidates, and reorganizes on the objective.
10. On order, the unit withdraws from the objective.
11. Account for all personnel prior to the final withdrawal.
12. Execute withdrawal.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-OFF-2201

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FMFM 7-32 Raid Operations

LAR-OFF-5204: Conduct anti-armor ambush

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is operating tactically with attached infantry and is in an assembly area. The unit is ordered to conduct an anti-armor ambush to destroy enemy vehicles and disrupt their reconnaissance efforts.

STANDARD: The platoon must conduct a reconnaissance to determine the best location for the ambush and the Objective Rally Point (ORP), and move to the ambush site maintaining cover and concealment. The platoon commander assigns vehicle positions that have good fields of fire into the designated kill zone, cover and concealment, an obstacle between the position and the kill zone, and a covered and concealed withdrawal route. Indirect fire targets should be planned in the kill zone. The platoon must report the enemy's approach into the area, and the platoon commander must give the method of initial engagement once the enemy enters the kill zone. All fires must be started and stopped on signal. All enemy vehicles must be destroyed or forced to withdraw. The platoon must displace to the designated ORP.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander receives/analyzes OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Determine location of enemy element.
3. The platoon commander/section leader, accompanied by security personnel, conduct leader's reconnaissance to confirm the plan and return to the

- objective rally point (ORP).
4. Identify covered and concealed routes to ambush position (if not specified in the order) and, if applicable, use way points to assist in navigation.
 5. The security element departs the assembly area and moves to assigned positions where they can secure the flanks of the ambush site.
 6. The platoon commander assigns positions that have: good fields of fire into the kill zone, offering maximum standoff for the TOW system; cover and concealment; an obstacle between the platoon/section and the kill zone; covered and concealed withdrawal routes.
 7. The platoon commander/section leader plans indirect fire targets in the kill zone to cover the platoon's withdrawal.
 8. If possible, platoon members prepare or improve covered and concealed positions while waiting for the enemy.
 9. Upon observing the enemy, the security team alerts the platoon commander/section leader.
 10. At a minimum, the team reports direction of movement, size of target, and any special weapons and equipment carried.
 11. All platoon/section members remain motionless and employ noise and light discipline until the enemy appears in the kill zone.
 12. The platoon commander gives the method of engagement.
 13. The platoon commander signals the initiating cue to commence fire.
 14. Upon initiating the ambush the remainder of the armor-killer team opens fire with the remaining weapons.
 15. Indirect fires should impact the kill zone as soon as possible after the initiation of the ambush.
 16. The platoon/section destroys the enemy.
 17. The platoon commander signals cease fire.
 18. The platoon commander/section leader gives the signal to withdraw.
 19. The platoon/section withdraws to the ORP.
 20. Smoke is used to cover the withdrawal.
 21. The platoon commander/section leader determines the method of withdrawal.
 22. The platoon commander reports IAW the OPORD.
 23. The platoon/section halts at least one terrain feature away and disseminates information.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-OFF-5205: Conduct operations in an urban area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon receives an operations order or fragmentary order to clear a small town and defend it against enemy insurgent/rebel activity. Threat contact is probable.

STANDARD: The platoon must observe all dimensions of the battlespace to include cellars, streets and roofs of the town. Movement and overwatch elements must be designated and the scout teams must be effectively employed

to clear the town. The platoon must establish security and occupy defensive positions to prevent enemy infiltration and allow humanitarian operations within the town.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander, in coordination with the supported infantry unit leaders, conducts a physical or map reconnaissance, based on METT-TC, of the routes to be used by the CO/TM in the built-up area.
2. Identify primary and supporting routes.
3. Identify approach routes to the built-up area.
4. Identify restrictive locations along the route that may provide ambush positions.
5. Identify dominating structures along the route.
6. Identify routes out of the built-up area.
7. Coordinate locations within the built-up area and along routes of movement for rally points.
8. Evaluate the situation, including the following factors: building types (including layout and construction materials); subsurface entry and exit points and avenues of approach; and requirements for special equipment and materials.
9. Task organize the platoon to support the needs of the CO/TM assault and breach forces (may require platoon to support tactical operations at the section level).
10. If time allows, conduct detailed rehearsals with infantry units to ensure understanding of tactical requirements, local security for LAVs, danger areas, vehicle strengths and limitations in MOUT, ammunition performance, movement techniques, direct fire control and marking techniques, CSS requirements etc.
11. The LAV platoon provides overwatch as the support force in order to protect the assault force during movement to the built-up area.
12. Employ LAVs in support by fire (SBF) positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions, and cover high-speed avenues of approach.
13. Use covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.
14. Establish sectors of fire and direct fire responsibilities for tanks along the surface (ground, street, and water) level.
15. Direct LAVs to provide support in the built-up area as necessary (utilize thermal sights to provide security at firm bases; LAVs to carry emergency resupply to infantry squads, QRF missions etc.).
16. The CO/TM commander may direct the LAV platoon to conduct the following urban offensive operations: neutralize enemy positions with machine gun fire, destroy enemy strong points with main gun fire, destroy obstacles across streets, force entry of infantry into buildings, emplace supporting fires as directed by the infantry, and establish roadblocks and barricades.
17. The CO/TM commander may employ the LAV platoon for the following urban defensive operations: on the edge of the city in mutually supporting positions, on key terrain on the flanks of towns and villages, in positions from which they can cover barricades and obstacles by fire, and as part of the reserve.
18. Monitor the flow of battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.
19. Report the completion of clearance of the built-up area.
20. Treat and evacuate casualties; secure and process enemy prisoners of war (EPW), as required.
21. Continue operations as directed.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-OFF-5206: Conduct a patrol in a MOUT environment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon receives an operations order or fragmentary order to conduct operations in a small town. Threat contact is probable.

STANDARD: The platoon must adhere to the principles of MOUT operation outlined in MCWP 3-25.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain and applicable component events.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Issue operations order and conduct prepare for combat checks.
2. Depart friendly lines.
3. Conduct assigned mission in accordance with the principles of MOUT operations outlined in MCWP 3-25.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain.
4. Utilize tactical control measures such as an urban grid reference system, checkpoints, phase lines, rally points, etc.
5. Utilize unit SOPs when encountering danger areas.
6. Maintain all-around security.
7. Conduct appropriate fire support planning.
8. Submit reports as required IAW unit SOPs.
9. Re-enter friendly lines.
10. Conduct patrol debrief, consolidate information, and forward to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-OFF-4201

LAR-PAT-4202

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-TAC-2404

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
 4. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
 5. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

LAR-OFF-5207: Conduct a cordon and search

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an order to conduct a cordon and search to locate enemy personnel, weapons, or equipment in a hostile environment with appropriate reinforcements (engineers, EOD, PSYOPS, military working dogs, etc.) during daylight or periods of reduced visibility.

STANDARD: Order issued to all participating and supporting personnel. Platoon is task organized with HQ, cordon (security) elements, search elements, and reaction force or reserve. Once cordon is established enemy personnel are unable to escape search area. Search discovers all enemy personnel, weapons, and equipment in the search area.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct planning and coordination with battalion and supporting/adjacent units.
2. Task organize the platoon.
3. Issue order to all organic, attached, and supporting units.
4. Establish inner and outer cordons around search area/location and prevent movement into/out of the area.
5. If possible, interact with civilians to gain cooperation from the local residents and gather information about search objectives.
6. Search and/or interview all civilians/non-combatants for suspected enemy personnel.
7. Search all buildings or likely hiding sites for enemy weapons, equipment or other contraband.
8. Avoid unnecessary force or damage to civilian property.
9. Immediately report and attempt to exploit information gained from questioning civilians, detainees or from hidden caches.
10. React to enemy contact in accordance with unit SOP's briefed prior to the operation.
11. Upon completion of search, conduct retrograde of inner and outer cordon.
12. Upon completion of the cordon and search debrief unit actions and reaction to enemy contact.
13. Report observations/after action items to battalion and adjacent units

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-TAC-2404

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FM 3-21.9 SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad
3. MCWP 3-33.1 MAGTF Civil Affairs
4. MCWP 3-33.2 Civil Disturbance

LAR-DEF-5301: Act as a quartering party for an assembly area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: An LAR platoon is given a task to act as a quartering party of an assembly area.

STANDARD: The platoon moves to an unfamiliar area, and ensures that the site meets all of the higher commander's requirements. The platoon must reconnoiter the area and establish security. Platoon positions and sectors of fire are identified along likely avenues of approach, recommended vehicle positions identified and marked and guides are posted.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Reconnoiter the area, if area is not suitable, the unit leader reports to higher and provide recommendation of another area.
2. Organize the area by marking tentative unit/vehicle locations.
3. Improve and mark entrances, exits and internal routes.
4. Perform guide duties.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-DEF-5302: Conduct a screen

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is ordered to screen for a larger force. The threat situation is unknown, but there may be enemy company sized forces and reconnaissance elements operating in the area.

STANDARD: The platoon must establish the screen at the correct location, and not later than the time specified in the higher headquarters' operation order. The platoon must maintain continuous surveillance of high speed avenues of approach into the assigned sector. Provide early warning of enemy approach and accurately report enemy activity. Gain and maintain contact with enemy main body, while impeding and harassing with direct and indirect fires. Within its capabilities, destroy enemy reconnaissance elements. Unless directed, do not become decisively engaged.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Maintain continuous surveillance of the area of operations, including all assigned NAI's, or avenues of approach into the sector.
2. Provide early warning of threat approach.
3. Within capability and based on the commanders guidance, identify threat reconnaissance units, and in coordination with other combat elements, destroy them.
4. Gain and maintain contact with the threat main body, report threat activity, and conduct proper hand over with other elements.
5. Impede and harass the threat main body by use of direct and indirect fires.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-DEF-2304

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-DEF-5303: Establish a platoon battle position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: An LAR platoon is tasked with establishing a platoon battle position. Enemy threat is likely.

STANDARD: All vehicle locations that provide cover and concealment (if possible), are identified and marked. Scouts are dismounted to provide local security and early warning. An appropriate platoon fire plan is developed and passed to higher.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Assign primary vehicle positions.
3. Direct the assignment of sectors of fires.
4. Assign alternate/supplemental vehicle positions.
5. Establish route of withdrawal.
6. Coordinate supporting fires.
7. Coordinate with adjacent units.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-DEF-2303 0369-DEF-2301

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-DEF-5304: Defend an Urban Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting tactical operations as part company and receives an operation order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) directing it to defend a built-up area in an urban operations (UO) environment. The built-up area may be a very small village (10 or fewer buildings) in a lateral strip area (along a road), or a concentration of structures/facilities. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer assets, and air defense assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Enemy contact, which may include mounted and dismounted forces as well as indirect fires and aviation assets, is expected within the next 24 hours, but not before the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The unit establishes communications and digital connectivity (if applicable), with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standing operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon commander must designate appropriate vehicle positions, establish the priority of work per higher headquarters' guidance/orders, and must be prepared to defend not later than the time designated in the higher headquarters' operation order. The unit must detect threat vehicles and/or dismounted infantry and destroy them or force them to withdraw. The unit must continue to defend the battle position until all enemy vehicles and/or personnel are destroyed or forced to withdraw, or it receives permission from higher headquarters to displace. The unit should lose no more than one vehicle/crew to enemy fire and must lose no vehicles/crews to fratricide. After the destruction or withdrawal of the threat, or the displacement, the platoon must be prepared to continue its mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Based on the expected time of occupation, the unit may execute either a hasty or deliberate defense of the built-up area.
2. Company commander designates defensive control measures and disseminates information to platoons by voice or digital transmission.
3. Designate dismounted infantry positions.
4. Identify tentative locations for each platoon's primary defensive positions; identify TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for primary positions; identify alternate and supplementary defensive positions for mounted and dismounted forces; identify alternate and supplementary TRPs, EAs, and direct fire responsibilities for supplementary positions; complete coordination between mounted and dismounted elements for the execution of the plan; and establish signals for all elements IAW order or SOP.
5. Report "ESTABLISHED" to the company commander using voice or digital communications.
6. Designate reconnaissance objectives to identify weaknesses in the defensive plan and facilitate protection of the force.
7. Considerations include, but are not limited to the following: avenues of approach/positioning of obstacles, sniper positions, supporting weapons emplacement, subsurface effects (entry/exit points), noncombatants, location of key structures (such as water and electric facilities), concealment of friendly forces, potential friendly ambush points, and dead space.
8. Identify supporting weapons positions for obstacle coverage.
9. Record grid locations of vehicle/squad positions and reports them to company team commander.
10. Company commander and platoon/element leaders verify direct fire plan and proof vehicle and squad positions.
11. Ensure that platoon/element sectors of fire and observation overlap and tie in with those of adjacent units.
12. Select and develop vehicle positions that afford the best possible cover, concealment, observation, fields of fire, and do not restrict the vehicles ability to move when necessary.
13. Platoon commanders employ and focus direct fires, repositioning to alternate positions as necessary to destroy enemy forces and maintain survivability.
14. Platoons/elements move to alternate or supplementary BPs as required, maintaining flexibility and/or survivability.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

LAR-DEF-5305: Occupy an assembly area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The LAR platoon is conducting tactical operations and receives an OPORD to occupy an assembly area. The OPORD specifies required assembly area activities, REDCON levels, and priorities of work. Time is available to complete assembly area procedures. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon must dispatch appropriate quartering party personnel to the assembly area, move to the assembly area, and enter the assembly area without halting or slowing on the route of march. Vehicle/section fighting positions on the perimeter of the assembly area must permit observation and fires on all mounted and dismounted avenues of approach into the assembly area.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant designate quartering party.
2. Platoon quartering party prepares the assembly area (AA).
3. Assist in reconnaissance of the proposed AA.
4. Assist in improving and marking entrances, exits, and internal routes.
5. Assist in making obstacles and mines.
6. Select platoon position and mark tentative vehicle positions IAW OPORD/FRAGO or unit SOP.
7. Maintain surveillance and provide security of the area.
8. Platoon clears the release point (RP) and moves into the AA.
9. Follow directions from the guide stationed at the RP (if guides are used).
10. Platoon performs initial occupation of the AA.
11. Follow directions from guides and move into marked vehicle positions (using ground guides as necessary).
12. Orient weapons systems to cover sectors of responsibility.
13. Designate TRPs, trigger lines and disengagement criteria and plan.
14. Direct VCs to prepare range cards and/or sector sketches.
15. The platoon commander reports platoon arrival at AA and completion of initial occupation.
16. The platoon commander designates OP locations, as necessary; establishes sectors of fire that provide overlapping fields of fire; reduces dead space to minimum by employing hasty obstacles and indirect fires; verifies radio listening silence is maintained; directs platoon to camouflage vehicles and equipment; directs establishment of wire communications IAW unit SOP; and enforces noise, light and litter discipline.
17. Coordinate and perform resupply, including refueling and rearmament.
18. Platoon prepares to depart the AA.

19. Reconnoiter route and/or calculate time-distance factors from the platoon position to the SP, as directed.
20. Continue mission.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-DEF-5306: Emplace/Retrieve a hasty protective minefield

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is in continuous operations. Mines from the basic load are available and the use of mines is approved. Threat contact is not likely while emplacing or retrieving the mines.

STANDARD: The platoon must plan and emplace the mines to provide local security or to cover dead space. The platoon must retrieve all mines when ordered to depart the area. No casualties can occur during emplacement or retrieval.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Review the mission, the map of the area, and reconnaissance reports.
2. Determine enemy avenues of approach for armor and/or infantry.
3. Determine location for observation posts.
4. Determine logistical requirements for mine dump.
5. Identify key terrain features forming natural boundaries and obstacles.
6. Set up security.
7. Locate a permanent reference point in front of platoon position.
8. Designate a location for each mine and row marker in at least two rows.
9. Emplace mines as required.
10. Arm the mines.
11. Camouflage the mines.
12. Verify count of all safety pins and clips and turn-in to NCOIC.
13. Submit required reports to higher headquarters (intent, initiation, progress, completion, transfer).
14. Complete DA Form 1355-1-R.
15. Plot an azimuth from the reference point and/or the landmark to the end marker in the last row on the friendly forces side.
16. Identify and disarm the mines.
17. Remove mines.
18. Restore terrain to its natural state.
19. Destroy the minefield record, if required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 20-32 Mine/Countermining Operations
 2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
 3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
-

LAR-DEF-5307: Provide security for an EOD team

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is designated as a security element for an EOD team that has been given a demolition task. Threat contact is possible.

STANDARD: The platoon must make positive identification of the demolition target. Fragmentary order must be issued that includes movement to the site, security taskings and plan for withdrawal. The platoon must also coordinate with the EOD team on the plan to reduce the target and ensure that the EOD team can complete their mission unimpeded.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon conducts link up with EOD team.
2. Platoon briefs the EOD team on the tactical situation.
3. EOD assumes control of the target.
4. Platoon secures target area.
5. EOD destroys target.
6. EOD team departs the target area and the platoon collapses the security area.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-DEF-2305

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-TAC-5401: Execute actions on contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is moving in a tactical environment and encounters an enemy unit of unknown size. The platoon may or may not be engaged by the threat.

STANDARD: The vehicle that makes first contact must report the contact to the platoon commander using a SALUTE report, develop the situation and recommend a course of action to the platoon commander. The platoon commander must report the contact to the company commander using a SALUTE report, and either report the course of action that he is pursuing (if the threat can be overcome by the platoon), or recommend a course of action (if the threat requires company level action), while retaining sufficient combat power and freedom of maneuver to successfully continue the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Deploy and report.
2. Develop the situation.

3. Choose a course of action.
4. Execute a course of action.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-TAC-5402: Conduct checkpoint operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: An LAR platoon is tasked with conducting check point operation in an assigned area of responsibility.

STANDARD: The platoon completes all assigned tasks in the operations order and employs in accordance with unit SOP's, current ROE and applicable component events.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify the area that the checkpoint is to be established as well as canalization, deceleration, search and safe zones as applicable.
2. Establish and maintain security.
3. Establish checkpoint in accordance with unit SOP.
4. Search individuals/vehicles according to unit Standing Operating Procedure (SOP), higher headquarters order, and applicable Rules of Engagement (ROEs).
5. The security team maintains observation, clear fields of fire, and appropriate distance from individuals/vehicles being searched.
6. Rotate search element members and security element members are rotated periodically, per unit SOP.
7. Maintain communications with higher headquarters.
8. Process detainees per unit SOP.
9. Break down checkpoint per unit SOP, ensuring accountability of all personnel, equipment, confiscated items and detainees.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
 3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain
-

LAR-PAT-5403: Conduct a dismounted patrol

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: Given a platoon of LAVs and an appropriate operation order. The platoon's scouts are ordered to conduct a dismounted patrol with their organic equipment. Threat contact is likely.

STANDARD: The patrol must comply with higher headquarters orders. Platoon vehicles must be employed in support of the dismounted patrol. Accomplish mission and commanders intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct Forward Unit Coordination.
2. Exit friendly lines.
3. Conduct assigned patrol type (reconnaissance/combat).
4. Utilize control measures, i.e., checkpoints, rally points, etc.
5. Develop and use patrol routes that avoid unplanned exposure to civilians.
6. Utilize unit SOPs when encountering danger areas.
7. Maintain security at all times.
8. Ensure that vehicles are in continuous support of the dismounted patrol.
9. On contact develop the situation and maneuver your forces to gain advantage and accomplish mission.8. Employ appropriate fire support during enemy contact.
10. Submit appropriate reports, as required.
11. Achieve patrol purpose/intent.
12. Conduct re-entry of friendly lines.
13. Conduct debrief of patrol; consolidate information, and forward to higher headquarters.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-PAT-4202

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FMFM 6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling

LAR-INTL-5501: Process known or suspected enemy personnel

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The unit is conducting tactical operations and captures known or suspected enemy personnel while remaining in contact with enemy forces.

STANDARD: Known or suspected enemy personnel are expeditiously processed and treated IAW the law of war.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Search Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs) immediately after capture.
2. Tag and evacuate weapons, documents, and items of potential intelligence value at the same time as EPWs.
3. Return personnel items, protective clothes, and equipment to the EPWs.
4. Segregate EPWs by type and gender - Officers, NCO, unranked, civilian combatants, etc.
5. EPWs are prevented from conversing among themselves.
6. EPWs are processed quickly to obtain maximum intelligence benefit.
7. Report perishable information obtained from EPWs immediately to higher headquarters.

8. Ensure EPWs are safeguarded from abuse and the hazards of enemy fire until turned over to higher headquarters.
9. Treat enemy casualties with the same medical care and MEDEVAC priority as friendly casualties. Any difference in treatment.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War/Civilian Internees
 2. MCRP 4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees
 3. MCRP 5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare
-

LAR-OPS-5502: Prepare for combat operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 9 months

CONDITION: LAR platoon is assigned a tactical mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit prepares for operations in accordance with standard operating procedures (SOP), the order, appropriate references, and higher commander's guidance. Unit leaders refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence. The unit conducts extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S). Unit leaders conduct precombat checks. Unit leaders supervise subordinate troop-leading procedures to ensure planning and preparations are on track and consistent with the unit commander's intent. The unit conducts rehearsals during day and limited visibility if possible.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Begin planning by conducting a mission analysis of higher headquarters' order and the situation through METT-TC.
2. Issue a warning order.
3. Coordinate attachments and detachments, to include briefing attachments on applicable unit Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs).
4. Arrange for Reconnaissance: use tentative scheme of maneuver and information requirements to determine priorities for reconnaissance. Determine method of reconnaissance (leader's recon, recon patrol, and aerial).
5. The unit (or designated portion) initiates movement to assembly area or attack position, as required by the warning order.
6. Make reconnaissance: analyze information obtained; identify shortfalls; and request additional assistance from higher headquarters.
7. Conduct coordination with higher, adjacent, and supporting units.
8. Complete the plan.
9. Issue the order: (SMEAC) providing ample subordinate planning and preparation time by adhering as closely as possible to the 1/3 to 2/3 rule.
10. Supervise: Conduct final mission preparations.

11. Perform pre-combat inspections (PCIs) and pre-combat checks (PCCs) on knowledge of mission critical information, maintenance and functional checks of unit and personal equipment to include: vehicles, crew-served weapons, night vision equipment, communications equipment, and NBC equipment. Ensure vehicles are marked IAW mission requirements or SOP, combat loaded, topped off, and PMCS is performed in accordance with the standard operating procedures or warning order.
12. Issue, modify, or update orders based on changes in METT-TC.
13. Monitor activities of higher, adjacent, and supporting units and report any changes in unit activity to higher headquarters.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-NBC-5601: Cross a chemically contaminated area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is operating tactically and encounters a chemically contaminated area. Time and the mission dictate that the area cannot be bypassed. Threat contact is likely.

STANDARD: The platoon must use the best route across the area based on METT-TC. There must be no chemical casualties as a result of the crossing. The platoon must conduct a hasty DECON after completing the crossing.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Movement of unit into area is reported to company headquarters.
2. Monitor/Survey teams conduct NBC surveys as directed by Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs).
3. When the contaminated area is detected, the company submits an NBC 4 report to higher headquarters and increases to the appropriate MOPP level (MOPP 4 for chemical and biological contamination).
4. Adjust formations to increase intervals between individuals and units as the tactical situation permits.
5. Avoid puddles, overhanging branches, and bushes as much as possible.
6. Maintain security while moving through the contaminated area.
7. Move through contaminated area as rapidly as the tactical situation permits.
8. Submit reports in accordance with the Standing Operating Procedures (SOPs).
9. Drop expendable covering at the edge of the contaminated area.
10. Upon exiting the contaminated area by at least 500 meters, unit conducts a security halt.
11. Check for obvious contamination.
12. Conduct immediate decon on any contaminated areas. Treat and evacuate any casualties.
13. If the mission permits, company completes operational decontamination.
14. Update the NBC-5 report with new information obtained during the crossing.

CHAINED EVENTS:

LAR-NBC-4610

RELATED EVENTS:

0313-NBC-2601

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
 4. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
-

LAR-LOG-5901: Conduct medical evacuations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: During the course of an assigned mission an LAR platoon is required to treat and evacuate a friendly, enemy or civilian casualty.

STANDARD: All casualties are administered first aid and an evacuation is requested to higher using appropriate unit reporting procedures. Security is established that facilitates the evacuation of all casualties.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Injured Marine applies self-aid.
2. Marines apply buddy aid to the injured. Individuals demonstrate first aid knowledge in the treatment of fractures, penetrating wounds, and sucking chest wounds.
3. Evacuate WIA and KIA to casualty collection point (CCP) using designated carrying parties or litter teams, using covered and concealed casualty evacuation routes.
4. Unit corpsmen conduct triage at CCP to maximize number of survivors. Establish evacuation priorities.
5. Unit coordinates with higher headquarters for evacuation (ground, air, etc.) if required.
6. Begin casualty reporting and tracking immediately after an individual(s) is wounded, starting at the lowest unit level and terminating at higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures
2. MCRP 3-02G First Aid

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE SQUAD/SECTION & CREW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING	6001	6-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	6002	6-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	6003	6-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	6004	6-3
SQUAD/SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	6005	6-4
CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	6006	6-15

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE SQUAD/SECTION & CREW

6000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Squad/Section and Crew level Light Armor Reconnaissance unit events (4000 and 3000 Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

6001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "LAR" indicating that the event is for units in the Light Armor Reconnaissance Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Section and Crew level are:

MNVR - Maneuver

MORT - LAV-M Tasks

NBC - Nuclear, Chemical & Biological

OFF - Offensive Operations

PAT - Patrolling

SURV - Surveillance

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Conducts LAV Scout tactical tasks.
2. Conducts LAV-M mortarman essential fire support tasks.

6004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
LAR-MNVR-4101		Conduct a bridge/road/tunnel reconnaissance	6-4
LAR-MNVR-4102		Conduct a water crossing reconnaissance	6-4
LAR-OFF-4201		Conduct room clearing in a MOUT environment	6-5
LAR-PAT-4202		Conduct a dismounted security patrol	6-5
LAR-PAT-4401		Establish an observation post	6-6
LAR-SURV-4501		Conduct surveillance of an objective	6-7
LAR-MORT-4601		Fire priority target	6-8
LAR-MORT-4602		Fire immediate suppression/smoke	6-8
LAR-MORT-4603		Fire quick smoke	6-9
LAR-MORT-4604		Fire a Final Protective Fire (FPF)	6-10
LAR-MORT-4605		Fire illumination	6-11
LAR-MORT-4606		Fire coordinated illumination and high explosive	6-11
LAR-MORT-4607		Fire hipshoot	6-12
LAR-MORT-4608		Fire time on target (TOT)	6-13
LAR-MORT-4609		Register and adjust parallel sheaf	6-13
LAR-NBC-4610		Conduct monitor survey operations	6-14
LAR-MORT-3601		Select a mortar position	6-15
LAR-MORT-3602		Refer and realign a mortar	6-15
LAR-MORT-3603		Lay the mortar using the compass method	6-16
LAR-MORT-3604		Lay the mortar using direct lay	6-16
LAR-MORT-3605		Lay the mortar using reciprocal lay	6-17
LAR-MORT-3606		Lay the mortar using direct alignment	6-17
LAR-MORT-3607		Lay the mortar for small and large deflection and elevation changes	6-17
LAR-MORT-3608		Engage targets using traversing and searching fires	6-18
LAR-MORT-3609		Fire adjust fire	6-19
LAR-MORT-3610		Fire adjust fire without an FDC	6-19
LAR-MORT-3611		Register a mortar FPF	6-19

6005. SQUAD/SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

LAR-MNVR-4101: Conduct a bridge/road/tunnel reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The scout team is operating as part of an LAV unit in a tactical environment and is ordered to conduct a bridge/road/tunnel reconnaissance.

STANDARD: The scout team must move to the designated bridge/road/tunnel, collect the required information, complete the appropriate reconnaissance report, return to its parent unit without detection, and report the collected information.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Send dismounted element to do detailed examination of bridge/road/tunnel.
2. Ensure the bridge/road/tunnel is clear of demolitions.
3. Identify any structural damage.
4. Conduct hasty classification of the bridge (if required).
5. Send applicable reconnaissance report to higher.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-MNVR-4102: Conduct a water crossing reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The scout team is operating as part of an LAV unit in a tactical environment and has been ordered to conduct a water crossing reconnaissance.

STANDARD: The scout team must move to the designated water crossing, collect the required information, complete the fording site reconnaissance report, return to its parent unit without detection, and report the collected information.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Use maximum reconnaissance force forward.
2. Orient on the reconnaissance objective.
3. Determine trafficability of any major route to the crossing site.
4. Locate and evaluate fords and/or crossing sites near all bridges within the zone.
5. Identify threat forces that can influence within the zone.
6. Submit ford report.
7. Continue mission.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-OFF-4201: Conduct room clearing in a MOUT environment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The scout team is operating as part of an LAV unit in an urban environment and is ordered to conduct a room clearing.

STANDARD: The scout team must move to the building, clear the rooms, and return to its parent unit and report.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Approach entry way.
2. Stack outside the entry way.
3. Enter the room.
4. Clear assigned sector.
5. Communicate possible threats.
6. Conduct overhead check.
7. Conduct a dead check.
8. Mark entry way.
9. Provide security.

RELATED EVENTS:

0303-TAC-2404

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0300-MOUT-1002 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-PAT-4202: Conduct a dismounted security patrol

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The LAR platoon is operating in a tactical environment and is ordered to conduct a dismounted security patrol.

STANDARD: The scout team must patrol the designated area, collect required information, report any enemy sightings via appropriate communications, and return to its parent unit without detection.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Exit friendly lines.
2. Conduct assigned patrol type (reconnaissance/security/combat).
3. Utilize control measures, i.e., checkpoints, rally points, etc.
4. Develop and use patrol routes that avoid unplanned exposure to civilians, routes along ridgelines, and danger areas.
5. Utilize tactically sound unit SOPs when encountering danger areas
6. Maintain security at all times.
7. Employ appropriate fire support during enemy contact.
8. Submit appropriate reports, as required.

REFERENCE:

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-OFF-6108 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-PAT-4401: Establish an observation post

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Scout Team is operating as part of an LAV unit in a tactical environment and is ordered to establish an observation post.

STANDARD: The Scout Team must move into its designated position and operate in the site without being detected. The team must establish communication with its higher headquarters and report all observed activity.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander selects OP sites.
2. Determine how many OPs are needed based on avenues of approach/NAIs the unit must cover.
3. Determine whether OPs will be mounted or dismounted.
4. Select sites that provide unobstructed observation of the desired area.
5. Select sites that provide cover and concealment.
6. Verify covered and concealed routes into and out of the sites.
7. Verify positions do not skyline the observers.
8. Dismounted OPs should be emplaced within effective machine gun range of the unit and a minimum of two personnel should man a dismounted OP.
9. Orient OPs by relating mission graphics to the terrain (TRPs, trigger point, break point).
10. Specify primary/secondary avenues of approach, means of communications (visual, wire, radio), covered/concealed routes to and from the OPs, and displacement criteria for the OPs.
11. Verify all required personnel equipment (Kevlar helmet, weapons, MOPP gear) is on hand/serviceable.
12. Verify proper communications equipment (visual, wire, radio, digital) is on hand/serviceable.

13. Verify digital communications settings and defaults with graphics are correct or map with graphics is on hand.
14. Verify binoculars are on hand/serviceable.
15. Verify night vision goggles are on hand/serviceable.
16. Platoon OP personnel occupy dismounted site.
17. Report to platoon commander when set.
18. Run hot loop (wire) to LAV section.
19. Scout squad occupies mounted OP site.
20. Dismount and move forward to verify routes to the sites provide adequate cover and concealment.
21. Verify OP sites afford cover and concealment and unobstructed observation of mounted avenues of approach in platoon area.
22. Brief VCs of vehicle OPs on avenues of approach, dead space, and routes into and out of OPs.
23. Brief gunners/drivers and move vehicles forward into OP positions (VCs of OP vehicles).
24. Develop range cards/sector sketches in hard copy or in digital communications and send copy to platoon commander using digital communications.
25. Platoon commander/platoon sergeant inspects dismounted/mounted OPs.
26. Maintain constant surveillance of the sector and/or NAI.
27. Report enemy activity to platoon commander, using digital communications or FM communications.
28. Platoon OP personnel improve positions as time permits.
29. Camouflage the site.
30. Establish wire communications.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

LAR-SURV-4501: Conduct surveillance of an objective

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The scout team is operating as part of an LAV unit in a tactical environment and has been ordered to survey an objective.

STANDARD: The scout team must conduct surveillance of an objective identified by higher headquarters. The team must report SPOTREP information without compromising their position.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Record information of military/tactical importance.
2. Utilize reporting formats.
3. Utilize tactical and other radios.
4. Transmit reports.
5. Conduct link up and provide "data dump" with supported unit commander as needed.
6. Conduct debriefs with team/higher/S-2 intelligence.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 8541-SURV-1003 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4601: Fire priority target

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The LAV-M unit is operating tactically in a firing position and receives a request to engage a priority target. The FDC has computed the target and given the firing data to the mortar squads. The target is within the transfer limits of a registration point.

STANDARD: The unit must initiate an accurate fire for effect within thirty seconds (if laid on the priority target) or one minute (if not already laid on the priority target) of receiving the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Forward Observer (FO) prepares a Call For Fire (CFF) and transmits it to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
2. Fire Direction Center (FDC) monitors the call, and determines if the unit can accept the fire mission.
3. Fire Direction Center (FDC) issues fire command for the priority target (data already determined).
4. Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines subsequent corrections.
5. Fire for Effect (FFE) is initiated after receipt of target location and covers the designated area.
6. Refinement data is computed and recorded (if required).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4106 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4602: Fire immediate suppression/smoke

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The LAV-M section is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The section receives a request to fire an immediate suppression/smoke mission.

STANDARD: The section must fire the initial volley within ninety seconds of receiving the mission and must fire an accurate fire for effect within five minutes of receiving the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Forward Observer (FO) prepares a Call For Fire (CFF) and transmits it to the Fire Direction Center (FDC).
2. Fire Direction Center (FDC) monitors the call, determines if the unit can accept the fire mission, and begins to work up data.
3. Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines initial data and issues fire command.
4. Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines subsequent corrections, if any.
5. If an adjustment is requested, mortars lay on the adjusted data.
6. Initiate Fire For Effect (FFE).
7. Refinement data is computed and recorded (if required).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4107 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4603: Fire quick smoke

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The LAV-M section is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The section receives a request to fire a quick smoke mission.

STANDARD: The section must fire the mission so that the smoke screen is in the correct location, is fully established and is maintained for the period prescribed, per the mission request.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit receives request for quick smoke mission.
2. Forward Observer (FO) adjusts with High Explosive (HE) rounds to ensure proper placement of smoke.
3. Forward Observer (FO) confirms data by firing a confirmation round of smoke.
4. A screen is established to cover the requested area.

5. The screen is maintained for the requested duration.
6. Refinement data is computed and recorded (if required).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4108 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4604: Fire a Final Protective Fire (FPF)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The section is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The section receives a request to adjust an FPF. Coordination for the FPF has already been accomplished among the mortar section, forward observer, and supported unit. All mortars must be adjusted onto the FPF.

STANDARD: The section must complete the adjustment within twelve minutes of receiving the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The Forward Observer (FO) selects an adjusting point and transmits a Call For Fire (CFF) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC) announcing "danger close".
2. The FDC computes data and transmits fire commands to the gun line.
3. The FO adjusts rounds for each mortar piece utilizing the creeping method.
4. The FDC computes subsequent corrections until all rounds are on the Final Protective Fire (FPF) line.
5. Continue to adjust until all rounds are in the desired location for each piece. The FO transmits any refinement data to the FDC.
6. The FDC records firing data separately for each piece once the FPF is adjusted.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4110 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4605: Fire illumination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The section is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The section receives a request for battlefield illumination.

STANDARD: The section must fire the mission so that the target is illuminated within five minutes of receiving the mission, and must maintain continuous illumination for the period prescribed in the request.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit receives request for an illumination mission.
2. The Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines initial data and issues fire commands to the unit.
3. The unit fires initial adjusting illumination round.
4. The Forward Observer (FO) adjusts location and height of burst (HOB).
5. The FDC determines subsequent corrections, if any.
6. Once all adjustments have been made illumination is maintained for the period of time requested.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4111 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4606: Fire coordinated illumination and high explosive

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The section is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The section receives a request for coordinated battlefield illumination and high explosive. Illumination has already been registered.

STANDARD: The section must fire the mission so that the target area is illuminated when the fire for effect (HE) impacts. The fire for effect must be fired within twelve minutes of receipt of the target location.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit receives request for an illumination mission.
2. The Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines initial data and issues fire commands to the unit.
3. The unit fires initial adjusting illumination round.

4. The Forward Observer (FO) adjusts location and height of burst (HOB).
5. The FDC determines subsequent corrections, if any.
6. Once all adjustments have been made illumination is maintained for the period of time requested.
7. Transmit coordinated illumination Call For Fire (CFF), in proper sequence.
8. Determine and transmit subsequent corrections within 15 seconds of High Explosive (HE) round impact.
9. Fire for Effect (FFE).
10. Transmit refinement data (if any), record as target (if desired), end of mission (required), and surveillance (required).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4111 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4607: Fire hipshoot

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The section is operating tactically and is moving. The section receives an immediate suppression/smoke fire mission.

STANDARD: The section must initiate an effective fire for effect within four minutes of receiving the mission.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Fire Direction Center (FDC) authenticates the call from the forward observer (FO).
2. Mortar unit selects mortar position based on Mission, Enemy, Terrain, Troops, Time and Civil Considerations.
3. Fire Direction Center (FDC) monitors the call, determines if the unit can accept the fire mission, and begins to work up data.
4. Deploy vehicles or squads based on guidance or unit Standing Operating Procedure (SOP).
5. Give gun line magnetic direction and place out a single aiming stake. Lay guns at 3200 mils on the single stake.
6. Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines initial data and issues fire command to gun line within 2 minutes of last element of Call For Fire (CFF).
7. Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines subsequent corrections.
8. If an immediate suppression/smoke mission, unit conducts Fire for Effect (FFE).
9. The adjusting mortar completes its lay, placing out far and near aiming stakes, and indexes the referred deflection to an accuracy of zero mils

- with a correctly aligned sight picture.
10. Non-adjusting squads complete their lay using 1 of the methods identified in crew drills.
 11. Mortar unit adjusts onto target and initiates a Fire For Effect (FFE).

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4113 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-4608: Fire time on target (TOT)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The LAV-M unit is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The unit receives a request to fire a Time On Target (TOT) at least five minutes before the TOT. The unit has already registered and target is within the transfer limits of a registration point.

STANDARD: The unit must fire an accurate fire for effect that hits the target within five seconds of the requested TOT.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Receive Call For Fire (CFF).
2. Execute correction (if required).
3. Execute End of Mission (EOM) and surveillance.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
 4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller
-

LAR-MORT-4609: Register and adjust parallel sheaf

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The section is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The section receives a request to conduct a registration mission. The firing position and registration point have been surveyed and a current Meteorological (MET) message is available.

STANDARD: The section must register and adjust its parallel sheaf and apply all corrections to the mortars and firing data.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The Forward Observer (FO) or Fire Direction Center (FDC) selects a

- registration point
2. Fire Direction Center (FDC) determines initial data and issues fire command
 3. Forward Observer (FO) adjusts with the base mortar
 4. Once the base mortar is adjusted, all remaining guns will fire a section left/right
 5. Refire corrections of 50 meters or more, until the unit is registered in a parallel sheaf

REFERENCES :

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4109 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-NBC-4610: Conduct monitor survey operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: Unit encounters a suspected contaminated area and conducts monitor/survey operations.

STANDARD: The presence of chemical or biological agents is identified and company assumes MOPP 4 in time to prevent casualties. NBC-1 report must be submitted to battalion immediately. The unit retains freedom of maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Supervise detection operations to determine the type and extent of contamination.
2. Coordinate activities to minimize contamination.
3. Supervise unmasking.
4. Supervise basic personnel decontamination.
5. Supervise partial unit decontamination.
6. Supervise decontamination of individual equipment.
7. Supervise decontamination of unit equipment, including: crew served weapons and vehicles, ammunition, optical instruments, communications equipment, and food and water.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-4 NBC Protection
2. FM 3-5 NBC Decontamination
3. FM 3-7 NBC Handbook
4. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
5. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection

6006. CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

LAR-MORT-3601: Select a mortar position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, assigned individual weapons, a tactical situation, while wearing prescribed fighting load and references

STANDARD: The crew must select its specific location. The crew must select a position that provides cover and concealment, and affords proper drainage and adequate resupply routes. The position must allow for mask clearance and dispersion, and have no overhead interference. It must also facilitate rapid displacement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-3100 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-3602: Refer and realign a mortar

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, assigned individual weapons, a subsequent fire command and references.

STANDARD: The crew must lay the mortar within 75 seconds during daylight and 100 seconds during darkness and/or MOPP 4 and to a tolerance of 1 mil.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-3101 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-3603: Lay the mortar using the compass method

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a general location, compass, an azimuth of lay, the prescribed fighting load and references.

STANDARD: The crew must establish a direction stake and mount the mortar on that stake within 2 minutes during daylight and 2 minutes, 30 seconds during darkness and/or MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-3102 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-3604: Lay the mortar using direct lay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a general location, prepared ammunition, assigned individual weapons, while wearing prescribed fighting load and references.

STANDARD: The crew must lay the mortar bisecting the target within 80 seconds. Rounds must have effect on target.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-3103 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR-MORT-3605: Lay the mortar using reciprocal lay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a general location, the prescribed fighting load and references.

STANDARD: The crew must lay the mortar within 90 seconds during daylight and 115 seconds during darkness and/or MOPP 4, to a tolerance of 1 mil, using the M2 aiming circle or a base mortar's sight.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

LAR-MORT-3606: Lay the mortar using direct alignment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a general location, the prescribed fighting load and references.

STANDARD: The crew must lay the mortar on the alignment stake and the alignment stake must be aligned between the gun and the target. If using the natural object method, the mortar must be aligned on the designated edge of the object.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

LAR-MORT-3607: Lay the mortar for small and large deflection and elevation changes

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a general location, the prescribed fighting load and references.

STANDARD: The crew must lay the mortar within 25 seconds for a small deflection and elevation change during daylight, and 35 seconds during darkness and/or MOPP 4. The crew must relay the mortar within 40 seconds for large deflection and elevation changes; 50 seconds in darkness and/or MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. In accordance with FM 23-90.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

LAR-MORT-3608: Engage targets using traversing and searching fires

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a firing position, a firing mission, prepared ammunition, assigned individual weapons, while wearing prescribed fighting load and references.

STANDARD: The crew must manipulate the mortar within 60 seconds to a tolerance of 20 mils for both deflection and elevation. The rounds must have an effect on target.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Mortar team receives a fire command, "prepare to traverse right to left".
2. Mortar team repeats fire command.
3. Gunner places the data on the sight.
4. Gunner traverses the bipods all the way left or right, and backs off two (2) turns.
5. Ammunition Man prepares ammunition for firing.
6. Gunner relays the mortar on the posts.
7. On command, the Assistant Gunner half loads and fires the initial round.
8. Gunner manipulates the traverse and elevation.
9. Gunner re-levels the cross level bubble.
10. Repeat steps 6 through 9 until all rounds called for in the fire command are expended.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

LAR-MORT-3609: Fire adjust fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The crew is operating tactically and is in a firing position. The crew receives an adjust fire mission using either the grid coordinate, polar coordinate or shift from a known point method.

STANDARD: The crew must fire the first adjusting rounds within 30 seconds of receipt of the mission and must fire for effect within 4 minutes of the initial adjusting rounds.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Forward Observer (FO) prepares a Call For Fire (CFF) and transmits it to the Fire Direction Center (FDC)
-

LAR-MORT-3610: Fire adjust fire without an FDC

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, a firing position, prepared ammunition, assigned individual weapons, while wearing prescribed fighting load and references. The mortar is laid on a registration point and has four additional aiming posts. The crew has the principle direction of lay and the grid coordinates of the FO. The FO is within 100m of the mortar-target line. The crew receives an adjust fire mission using either the grid coordinate, polar coordinate or shift from a known point method.

STANDARD: The crew must fire the first adjusting rounds within 30 seconds of receipt of the mission and must fire for effect within 4 minutes of the initial adjusting rounds.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

LAR-MORT-3611: Register a mortar FPF

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-M with crew, prepared positions, prepared ammunition, assigned individual weapons, while wearing prescribed fighting load and references. A Forward Observer (FO) is given the grid for assigned Final Protective Fires (FPFs) for each of the mortar squads to cover dead space in the machinegun's FPLs not more than 100 meters forward of

friendly troops (simulated) in defensive positions. The crew receives instructions to register an FPF. The instructions include a location for the FPF.

STANDARD: The crew must register the FPF and report either the two grid locations for the ends or the center grid and attitude (if the FPF cannot be "shot in").

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The Forward Observer (FO) selects an adjusting point and transmits a Call For Fire (CFF) to the Fire Direction Center (FDC) announcing "danger close."
2. The FDC computes data and transmits fire commands to the gun line.
3. The FO adjusts rounds for each mortar piece utilizing the creeping method.
4. The FDC computes subsequent corrections until all rounds are on the Final Protective Fire (FPF) line.
5. Continue to adjust until all rounds are in the desired location for each piece.
6. The FO transmits any refinement data to the FDC.
7. The FDC records firing data separately for each piece once the FPF is adjusted.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
4. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotter and Controller

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task INF-0341-4110 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE UNIT GUNNERY TABLES

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING	7001	7-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	7002	7-2
DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY.	7003	7-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA	7004	7-4
GUNNERY TABLES	7005	7-5

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

COLLECTIVE EVENTS LIGHT ARMOR RECONNAISSANCE UNIT GUNNERY TABLES

7000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Light Armor Reconnaissance unit gunnery collective events as executed through LAV gunnery tables 1-14. These tables illustrate the relationship between unit competencies (Mission Essential Tasks (METs), unit training (Collective events) and prerequisite individual training requirements. Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each event and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter directly represents the tables as identified in MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment.

7001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each individual event starts with "LAR" indicating the event is for the applicable MOS in the Light Armor Reconnaissance unit either at the crew or section level.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. The functional areas used are:

WPNS - Weapons & Gunnery
MORT - Mortars

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges. Administrative instructions, ordnance requirements, and other instructions provide amplifying guidance to support the conduct and execution of the gunnery tables.

7003. DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Conducts LAV, LAV-AT or LAV-M Gunnery Skills Test.
2. Conducts precision gunnery manipulation exercise.
3. Conducts battlesight gunnery manipulation exercise.
4. Conducts fundamentals of direct fire adjustments.
5. Conducts range determination exercise.
6. Conducts target acquisition exercise.
7. Demonstrates crew's ability to function as a unit.
8. Demonstrates crew's ability to use battlesight gunnery aiming and adjusting techniques.
9. Demonstrates crew's ability to function in an NBC environment.
10. Conducts crew battlesight engagement techniques during day and night scenarios.
11. Conducts crew precision gunnery during day and night scenarios.
12. Conducts crew engagements against multiple moving and stationary targets during day and night scenarios.

7004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
LAR-WPNS-3815		Complete LAV Gunnery Skills Test	7-5
LAR-WPNS-3816		Complete LAV-AT Gunnery Skills Test	7-5
LAR-MORT-3612		Complete LAV Mortar Gunnery Skills Test	7-6
LAR-WPNS-3801		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 1	7-6
LAR-WPNS-3802		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 2	7-6
LAR-WPNS-3803		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 3	7-7
LAR-WPNS-3804		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 4	7-8
LAR-WPNS-3805		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 5	7-8
LAR-WPNS-3806		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 6	7-9
LAR-WPNS-3807		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 7	7-10
LAR-WPNS-3808		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 8	7-11
LAR-WPNS-3809		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 9	7-12
LAR-WPNS-3810		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 10	7-13
LAR-WPNS-3811		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 11	7-14
LAR-WPNS-3812		Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 12	7-16
LAR-WPNS-4813		Complete Scout Section Gunnery Table 13	7-17
LAR-WPNS-4814		Complete Scout Section Gunnery Table 14	7-18

7005. GUNNERY TABLES

LAR-WPNS-3815: Complete LAV Gunnery Skills Test

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operational LAV-25 with SL-3, operational organic weapon systems, appropriate amount of dummy ammunition, vehicle crewmen, event specific equipment, 25mm boresight kit and adapter, stopwatch, pen and clipboard, qualified evaluator, a location to operate the LAV-25 and without the aid of technical manuals or publications.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct Test Station 1: Load the M242 25mm Automatic Gun
2. Conduct Test Station 2: Clear, Remove, Disassemble, Assemble, and Install the M242 25mm Automatic Gun
3. Conduct Test Station 3: Load the M240 7.62mm Coaxially Mounted Machine Gun
4. Conduct Test Station 4: Clear, Remove, Disassemble, Assemble, and Install the M240 7.62mm Coaxially Mounted Machine Gun
5. Conduct Test Station 5: Load the M240E1 Pintle-Mounted Machine Gun
6. Conduct Test Station 6: Clear, Remove, and Install the M240E1 Pintle-Mounted Machine Gun
7. Conduct Test Station 7: Boresight LAV-25 Turret Weapon System

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crewmen are evaluated based on a GO/NO GO criteria.

LAR-WPNS-3816: Conduct LAV-AT Gunnery Skills Test

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operational LAV-AT variant, appropriate TMs and references, crewmen, event specific equipment, and a range to operate the LAV.

STANDARD: Per the references and unit standing operating procedures.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-34 TOW Weapon System
 2. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

LAR-MORT-3612: Conduct LAV Mortar Gunnery Skills Test

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: Given an operational LAV-25 Mortar variant, appropriate TMs and references, crewmen, event specific equipment as specified in the current edition of FM 23-90, and a range to operate the LAV.

STANDARD: Per the references and unit standing operating procedures.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 3. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

LAR-WPNS-3801: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 1

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 1 is a precision gunnery manipulation exercise designed to evaluate each crewmember's ability, acting as a gunner, to properly range and aim at frontal and flank targets at varied ranges

CONDITION: Given an LAV, a visual aiming device (VAD), manipulation board, target markers, one shot per target, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: So Marines hit 4 of 5 targets within 15 seconds per phase.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Execute phase 1: flank manipulation.
2. Execute phase 2: progressive flank manipulation.
3. Execute phase 3: non-progressive frontal manipulation.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

LAR-WPNS-3802: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 2

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 2 is a battlesight gunnery manipulation exercise designed to evaluate the crewmember's ability, acting as a gunner, to properly aim at frontal targets representing "most dangerous" threats to the crew.

CONDITION: Given an LAV, a visual aiming device (VAD), scaled target panel, one shot per target, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: So Marines hit 4 of 5 HE targets within the center mass circle and 4 of 5 AP targets within the 6 o'clock circle within 30 seconds.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Staring at the zero circle, crewmember engages targets in numerical order given one shot per target.
2. The firing task is repeated in limited visibility using the thermal night sight.
3. The firing task is repeated in limited visibility using the passive night sight.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3801

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

LAR-WPNS-3803: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 3

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 3 is used to train the commander and the gunner in the fundamentals of direct fire adjustments.

CONDITION: Given a stationary LAV, M16A2 or M240 subcaliber device, known distance targets, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: So crewmembers use correct adjustment techniques, and hit the target with the second round to meet the time standards identified per the reference.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Apply direct fire adjustment using the gunner's controls on stationary target.
2. Apply direct fire adjustment using the commander's controls on stationary target.
3. Apply direct fire adjustment using the gunner's controls on moving target.
4. Apply direct fire adjustment using the commander's controls on moving target.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3802

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

LAR-WPNS-3804: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 4

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 4 begins the sustainment phase of the gunnery training program. Table 4 is a range determination exercise designed to evaluate the crewmember's ability to determine range to targets at various distances with the aided and unaided eye.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, visual aiming device (VAD), unknown distance targets, qualified evaluator, appropriate full or half-scale range, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Phase 1: Select an engagement method by determining if a lightly armored target is within battlesight range, and determine if an RPG team is within effective range.
2. Phase 2: Determine range to various targets with the aid of binoculars using the mil-relation rule.
3. Phase 3: Determine range to various targets using the M36 day and thermal sight.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3803 LAR-WPNS-3815

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

LAR-WPNS-3805: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 5

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 5 is a target acquisition exercise designed to evaluate the crew's ability to acquire and identify single and multiple vehicles and infantry threat targets for both a stationary and moving vehicle.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, visual aiming device (VAD), unknown distance targets, qualified evaluator, appropriate full or half-scale range, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: So Marines acquire target within ten seconds of full exposure. Crewmembers must receive a GO on 8 of 10 tasks to pass Table 5.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Acquire a stationary BMP, 1400-1700 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
2. Acquire a stationary BTR, 600-900 meters and a RPG team 300-500 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
3. Acquire a stationary BTR, 600-1000 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
4. Acquire two stationary BTRs, 1000-1400 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
5. Acquire dismounted troops, 500-700 meters and a RPG team, 300-500 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
6. Acquire a stationary truck, 500-700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
7. Acquire two stationary BMPs, 1400-1700 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
8. Acquire a RPG team, 500-700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
9. Acquire a stationary BTR, 800-1000 meters and a stationary BMP, 800-1000 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
10. Acquire dismounted troops, 700-1000 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3804

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

LAR-WPNS-3806: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 6

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 6 is a scaled, precision gunnery range designed to evaluate the crew's ability to function as a unit, and the gunner's ability to use precision aiming procedures on threat targets at various ranges.

CONDITION: Given a stationary LAV, visual aiming device (VAD), unknown distance targets, qualified evaluator, appropriately scaled range, one shot per target, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crewmembers must receive a GO on 8 of 10 tasks to pass Table 6.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Engage two stationary BMPs, 1400 meters, within 20 seconds.
2. Engage one BRDM, 1100 meters, within 15 seconds.
3. Engage one moving BMP, 1200 meters and one stationary BTR, 1000 meters, within 20 seconds.
4. Engage one stationary BTR, 1500 meters, within 15 seconds.
5. Engage two stationary BRDMs, 1300 meters, within 20 seconds.
6. Engage one moving BMP, 1500 meters, within 15 seconds.
7. Engage one stationary BMP, 1600 meters and one stationary BTR, 1600 meters, within 20 seconds.
8. Engage one stationary BRDM, 1000 meters and one stationary BMP, 1200 meters, within 20 seconds.
9. Engage two moving BMPs, 1400 meters, within 20 seconds.
10. Engage one stationary BMP, 1700 meters, within 15 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3805

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew duties will be evaluated as either satisfactory or unsatisfactory.

LAR-WPNS-3807: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 7

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 7 is a battlesight gunnery exercise fired on a scaled range designed to evaluate the crew's ability to use battlesight gunnery aiming and adjusting techniques on threat targets within battlesight range. All day tasks will be repeated under night/limited visibility conditions.

CONDITION: Given a stationary LAV, M16A2 subcaliber device, 5.56mm tracer ammunition, targets within battlesight range, qualified evaluator, appropriately scaled range, one shot per sensing and one shot to adjust, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crew must receive a GO on 8 of 10 tasks to pass Table 7.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Engage two stationary BMPs, 1400 meters, within 20 seconds.
2. Engage one stationary BMP, 1100 meters, within 10 seconds.
3. Engage two stationary BMPs, 900 meters, within 20 seconds.

4. Engage one stationary BMP, 1000 meters, within 10 seconds.
5. Engage two stationary BMPs, 1300 meters, within 20 seconds.
6. Engage one stationary BMP, 800 meters, within 10 seconds.
7. Engage two stationary BMPs, 1000 meters, within 20 seconds.
8. Engage two stationary BMPs, 1200 meters, within 20 seconds.
9. Engage two stationary BMPs, 1100 meters, within 20 seconds.
10. Engage one stationary BMP, 1000 meters, within 10 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3806

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew duties will be evaluated as either satisfactory or unsatisfactory.

LAR-WPNS-3808: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 8

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 8 is an NBC gunnery exercise fired with full caliber ammunition, designed to evaluate the crew's ability to function in an NBC environment. Units design Table 8 to meet NBC guidelines and parameters outlined in the component events.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, hatches closed, crewmembers in MOPP-4, appropriate full-caliber ammunition, full-scale range, targets within battlesight range, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crew must attain 70 or more points on 5 of the 8 tasks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Design eight firing tasks including targets in battlesight range.
2. Include four offensive and four defensive tasks.
3. Ensure there is an even distribution of single and multiple PC and infantry engagements.
4. Include a simultaneous engagement.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3807

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew duties are not evaluated; however, they are critiqued at the conclusion of Table 8.

LAR-WPNS-3809: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 9

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 9 is a full caliber battlesight table, fired on a full-scale range, designed to reinforce battlesight engagement techniques. Tasks 1-5 are fired during daytime operations and 6-10 are fired during nighttime operations.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, appropriate full-caliber ammunition, full-scale range, moving and stationary targets within battlesight range, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crews must successfully complete 8 of the 10 tasks with 70 points or more to achieve a GO.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BTR, 800-1200 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
2. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1000-1200 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
3. Employ battlesight gunnery against two stationary BMPs, 1200-1400 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
4. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary RPG team, 300-500 meters and a stationary BTR, 700-900 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
5. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BTR, 700-900 meters and a stationary BMP, 1000-1300 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
6. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BTR, 600-800 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
7. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1200-1400 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
8. Employ battlesight gunnery against two stationary BTRs, 800-1000 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
9. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BTR, 700-900 meters and a stationary BMP, 800-1100 meters, from a moving LAV-25.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3808 LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3807

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	76 rounds
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	50 rounds
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	67 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Ammunition requirements accommodate one crew per Table 9.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew duties are evaluated and critiqued after each firing evolution but this does not affect the crew's overall rating.

LAR-WPNS-3810: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 10

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 10 is a full caliber precision gunnery table, fired on a full-scale range that evaluates the crew's ability to use precision gunnery techniques. Tasks 1-5 are fired during daytime operations and 6-10 are fired during nighttime operations.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, appropriate full-caliber ammunition, full-scale range, moving and stationary targets outside of battlesight range, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crews must successfully complete 8 of the 10 tasks with 70 points or more to achieve a GO.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
2. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BTR, 1100-1300 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
3. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary jeep, 1300-1500 meters and a dismounted troops, 500-700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
4. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BMP, 1400-1600 meters and stationary dismounted troops, 700-900 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.

5. Employ precision gunnery against a moving jeep, 900-1100 meters and a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
6. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BTR, 1000-1200 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
7. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BTR, 900-1000 meters and a moving BMP, 1400-1600 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
8. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters and dismounted troops, 500-700 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
9. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BTR, 1100-1300 meters and a stationary BMP, 1400-1600 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
10. Employ precision gunnery against two stationary BTRs, 1300-1500 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3806 LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3809

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	59 rounds
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	300 rounds
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	76 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Ammunition requirements accommodate one crew per Table 10.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew duties are evaluated and critiqued but do not affect the crew's overall rating.

LAR-WPNS-3811: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 11

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 11 is a full caliber combined precision/battlesight gunnery table, fired on a full-scale range that serves as the 25mm prequalification table. Table 11 evaluates the crew's ability to engage targets placed in a realistic threat array using battlesight and precision methods of engagement. Tasks 1-5 are fired during daytime operations and 6-10 are fired during nighttime operations.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, appropriate full-caliber ammunition, full-scale range, moving and stationary targets, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crews must successfully complete 7 of the 10 tasks with 70 points or more to achieve a GO.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
2. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BTR, 700-900 meters and a stationary BMP, 1200-1400 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
3. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BTR, 900-1000 meters and a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
4. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1200-1400 meters and a stationary RPG team, 300-500 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
5. Employ precision gunnery against a moving jeep, 1300-1500 meters and a dismounted troops, 500-700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
6. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BTR, 600-800 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
7. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BMP, 1400-1600 meters and stationary dismounted troops, 500-700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
8. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BTR, 1000-1200 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
9. Employ battlesight gunnery against two stationary BMPs, 1000-1300 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
10. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BMP, 700-1000 meters and a stationary BTR, 800-1000 meters, from a moving LAV-25.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3810 LAR-WPNS-3815 LAR-WPNS-3809

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	71 rounds
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	250 rounds
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	55 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: Ammunition requirements accommodate one crew per Table 11.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew duties are evaluated and critiqued after each firing evolution but this does not affect the crew's overall rating. Crew cuts are assessed on Table 11.

LAR-WPNS-3812: Complete LAV-25 Gunnery Table 12

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 12 is a marksmanship based, single vehicle, crew qualification table. Table 12 evaluates the crew's ability to engage single and multiple, stationary and moving, vehicle and infantry targets placed in a realistic threat array, using the proper method of engagement. Tasks 1-5 are fired during daytime operations and 6-10 are fired during nighttime operations.

CONDITION: Given a stationary or moving LAV, appropriate full-caliber ammunition, full-scale range, moving and stationary targets, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: Crews must successfully complete 7 of the 10 tasks with 70 points or more to obtain an overall qualified rating.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
2. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BMP, 1500-1700 meters and a RPG team, 500-700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
3. Employ battlesight gunnery against two stationary BMPs, 1100-1400 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
4. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BMP, 700-1000 meters and a RPG team 300-500 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
5. Employ battlesight gunnery against two stationary BMPs, 1100-1400 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
6. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BMP, 1400-1700 meters and dismounted troops, 700-900 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
7. Employ precision gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1400-1600 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.
8. Employ precision gunnery against a moving BMP, 1500-1700 meters and a stationary BMP, 1500-1700 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
9. Employ battlesight gunnery against a stationary BMP, 1000-1300 meters and a RPG team 300-500 meters, from a moving LAV-25.
10. Employ battlesight gunnery against two stationary BMPs, 1000-1300 meters, from a stationary LAV-25.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3815

LAR-WPNS-3811

LAR-WPNS-3808

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A151 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball/1 Tracer Li	250 rounds
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	120 rounds

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Crew cuts are assessed on Table 12. Crews re-fire only those tasks that they failed to score at least 70 points. 700 points is the maximum a re-firing crew can achieve, regardless of score after initial attempt at qualification.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

Distinguished: 7 of 10 tasks with at least 70 points and a combined score of 900 points.
Superior: 7 of 10 tasks with at least 70 points and a combined score between 800-899.
Qualified: 7 of 10 tasks with at least 70 points and a combined score between 700-799.
Unqualified: 4 of 10 tasks with less than 70 points, or less than 700 points combined.

LAR-WPNS-4813: Complete Scout Section Gunnery Table 13

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 13 is an advanced gunnery table used to train and evaluate LAV-25 equipped scout sections in tactical and gunnery skills. The gunnery portion is conducted in accordance with Appendix L of MCWP 3-14.1 while the tactical portion is designed and evaluated per commander's guidance. Table 13 must have a day and night phase of fire.

CONDITION: Given a scout section operating as part of a platoon, fully operational LAV-25s with SL-3, vehicle crewmen, appropriate ammunition allocation, full-scale range, moving and stationary targets, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions, mission-type order and the reference.

STANDARD: The section must achieve, at a minimum, a GO on 70 percent of the tactical tasks and 70 percent on the gunnery tasks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct tactical phase based on commander's mission type order.
2. Conduct gunnery phase.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-3812 LAR-WPNS-3815

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

Distinguished: Combined score of 900 points or higher.
Superior: Combined score between 800-899 points.
Qualified: Combined score between 700-799 points.
Unqualified: Combined score less than 700 points.

LAR-WPNS-4814: Complete Scout Section Gunnery Table 14

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: Table 14 is an advanced gunnery table similar to Table 13. The table evaluates a scout section, as part of a platoon, in reconnaissance and engagement techniques against threat targets.

CONDITION: Given a scout section operating as part of a platoon, fully operational LAV-25s with SL-3, vehicle crewmen, an appropriate allocation of full-caliber ammunition, a full-scale range, moving and stationary targets, qualified evaluator, day and limited visibility conditions, mission-type order and the reference.

STANDARD: The section must achieve, at a minimum, a GO on 70 percent of the tactical tasks and 70 percent on the gunnery tasks.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct tactical phase based on commander's mission type order.
2. Conduct gunnery phase.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

LAR-WPNS-4813 LAR-WPNS-3815

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

Distinguished: Combined score of 900 points or higher.
Superior: Combined score between 800-899 points.
Qualified: Combined score between 700-799 points.
Unqualified: Combined score less than 700 points.

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 0313 & 0303

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING.	8001	8-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.	8002	8-2
PREREQUISITES	8003	8-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES.	8004	8-3
INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL.	8005	8-6
1000-LEVEL 0313 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	8006	8-9
2000-LEVEL 0313 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	8007	8-34
2000-LEVEL 0303 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	8008	8-61

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 0313 & 0303

8000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as Light Armored Vehicle (LAV) Crewman. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident career progression training (Light Armored Vehicle Leader & Commander Courses)/distance learning PME.

8001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "0313" or "0303" indicating that the event is for LAV Crewmen or LAV Officer.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for LAV Crewmen/Officers are:

COMM - Communications	DEF - Defensive Operations
FSPT - Fire Support	LOG - Logistics
MNVR - Maneuver	MOBL - Mobility
OFF - Offensive Operations	PAT - Patrolling
TAC - Other Tactical Operations	NBC - Nuclear, Biological & Chemical
TRNG - Training	PMCS - Preventive Maintenance
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	WPNS - Weapons & Gunnery

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

8003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine LAV Crewman will have completed the Light Armored Vehicle Crewman's Course, School of Infantry, Camp Pendleton, CA. The Marine LAV Officer will have completed the Light Armored Vehicle Leader's Course, School of Infantry, Camp Pendleton, CA.

8004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The LAV Crewman will complete the Light Armored Vehicle Crewman's Course, School of Infantry, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the LAV Crewman will conduct additional Level 2000 training in an Light Armor Reconnaissance unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses. Marine Non-Commissioned Officers assigned as vehicle commanders will receive career progression training by attending the Light Armored Vehicle Commander Course. Marine Staff Non-Commissioned Officers assigned to LAR units will complete the Light Armored Vehicle Leader's Course.

BILLET: Crewman, LAV. Junior 0313 Crewman on the LAV.

Core Capabilities

1. Executes commands related to employment and function of the vehicle.
2. Assists in the performance of vehicle pre-operations (ops), during-ops, at-halt and after-ops checks.
3. Assists in the performance of PMCS, to include vehicle weapons.
4. Camouflages vehicle.
5. Maintains vehicle security and security of collateral equipment.
6. Operates vehicle in water and/or ashore.
7. Operates vehicle communication system utilizing proper procedures.
8. Assists gunner in reloading the weapons station.
10. Assists the gunner in acquiring targets.

BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, LAR Platoon. The platoon sergeant is second in command of the LAR platoon. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the LAR platoon commander on training, welfare and administrative functions within the platoon.

Core Capabilities

1. Maintains the welfare and discipline of the platoon.
2. Assists in all maintenance management functions for the LAR platoon.
3. Advises the LAR platoon commander in the logistical support of the platoon.
4. Instructs LAR platoon and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects and safety procedures.

5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, ammunition, rations, petroleum, oil and lubricants (POL) through his chain of command.
6. Employs his vehicle's weapon station and communications system utilizing proper procedures.
7. Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
8. Controls the employment of his vehicle.
9. Assumes command in platoon commander's absence.
10. Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and unit.
11. Coordinates logistical support for LAR unit operations.
12. Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

BILLET: Company Gunnery Sergeant. Responsible for all logistical and training requirements.

Core Capabilities

1. Advises the company commander on unit training.
2. Coordinates unit logistical support.
3. Determines unit logistical requirements.
4. Coordinates embarkation of company vehicles and personnel.
5. Coordinates quartering party operations and assembly area activities.
6. Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects and safety procedures.
7. Assists the company commander in coordinating, conducting, and supervising unit training.

CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY LAV OFFICER. The LAV Officer will complete the Light Armored Vehicle Leader's Course upon graduation from The Basic School and Infantry Officer's Course. Subsequently LAV Officers will conduct additional Level 2000 training in a Light Armor Reconnaissance unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

BILLET: Light Armor Reconnaissance Platoon Commander. Responsible for the vehicles and crews in an LAR platoon. When he is the senior LAV officer assigned to an infantry or tank battalion, he also serves as a special staff officer to the battalion commander. The LAR platoon commander directs the

maneuver and fires of his platoon in accordance with the intent of the company commander. The LAR platoon commander occupies the vehicle commander's station of the LAV and is responsible for directing the employment the organic weapons systems and supporting arms. During water and ground operations the LAR platoon commander maintains control of the tactical movement of the unit.

CORE CAPABILITIES

1. Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
3. Makes operational planning recommendations to the supported unit commander on the employment of LAR unit.
4. Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated collateral equipment.
5. Employs proper movement techniques and formations.
6. Employs operational safety procedures.
7. Employs vehicle and unit fires in support of mission and in self-defense.
8. Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of LAR unit.
9. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of LAR unit with amphibious shipping.
10. Leads LAR platoon in tactical operations.

8005. INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
		1000 LEVEL 0313	
0313-MOBL-1101		Conduct a tactical road march	8-9
0313-COMM-1501		Communicate using LAV intercom equipment	8-9
0313-COMM-1502		Communicate using a single channel radio set	8-10
0313-PMCS-1701		Perform PMCS on the LAV-25	8-10
0313-PMCS-1702		Perform PMCS on the LAV hull	8-11
0313-PMCS-1703		Perform PMCS on the LAV turret	8-12
0313-PMCS-1704		Perform PMCS on the M242 25mm automatic gun	8-12
0313-PMCS-1705		Perform PMCS on the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun	8-13
0313-PMCS-1706		Perform PMCS on the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	8-14
0313-PMCS-1707		Perform PMCS on the M257 smoke grenade launcher	8-14
0313-PMCS-1708		Maintain an ordnance vehicle logbook	8-15
0313-PMCS-1709		Maintain a weapon record book	8-15
0313-PMCS-1710		Maintain the vehicle SL-3 equipment	8-16
0313-VOPS-1710		Drive an LAV	8-16
0313-VOPS-1711		Operate an LAV in water	8-17
0313-VOPS-1712		Operate LAV emergency equipment	8-17
0313-VOPS-1713		Recover a disabled LAV	8-18
0313-WPNS-1801		Load the M257 smoke grenade launcher	8-18
0313-WPNS-1802		Unload the M257 smoke grenade launcher	8-19
0313-WPNS-1803		Load the M242 25mm automatic gun	8-20
0313-WPNS-1804		Unload the M242 25mm automatic gun	8-20
0313-WPNS-1805		Load the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun	8-21
0313-WPNS-1806		Unload the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun	8-22
0313-WPNS-1807		Load the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	8-23
0313-WPNS-1808		Unload the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	8-23
0313-WPNS-1809		Boresight the M242 25mm automatic gun	8-24
0313-WPNS-1810		Boresight the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun	8-25
0313-WPNS-1811		Zero the M242 25mm automatic gun	8-26
0313-WPNS-1812		Zero the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun	8-27
0313-WPNS-1813		Engage targets with the M242 25mm automatic gun using precision gunnery	8-28
0313-WPNS-1814		Engage targets with the M242 25mm automatic gun using battlesight gunnery	8-28
0313-WPNS-1815		Engage targets with the M240 7.62mm coaxially mounted machinegun	8-29
0313-WPNS-1816		Engage targets with the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	8-30
0313-WPNS-1817		Fire the M257 smoke grenade launchers	8-31
0313-WPNS-1818		Perform immediate action procedures for the M242 25mm automatic gun	8-32

0313-WPNS-1819		Perform immediate action procedures for the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun	8-32
0313-WPNS-1820		Perform immediate action procedures for the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	8-33
0313-WPNS-1821		Perform immediate action procedures for the M257 smoke grenade launchers	8-33
		2000 LEVEL 0313	
0313-MNVR-2101		Participate in tactical formations and movement techniques	8-34
0313-OFF-2201		Conduct actions on contact	8-34
0313-OFF-2202		Employ an LAV-25 in a movement to contact	8-35
0313-OFF-2203		Employ an LAV-25 in a limited objective attack	8-35
0313-OFF-2204		Employ an LAV-25 in a raid	8-36
0313-OFF-2205		Conduct a passage of lines as a moving unit	8-36
0313-DEF-2301		Develop a range card for the LAV	8-37
0313-DEF-2302		Employ an LAV-25 in a battle position	8-37
0313-DEF-2303		Employ an LAV-25 in a screening operation	8-38
0313-DEF-2304		Conduct a passage of lines as a stationary unit	8-39
0313-TAC-2401		Employ scout team for local security	8-39
0313-PAT-2402		Employ an LAV-25 in a route reconnaissance mission	8-40
0313-PAT-2403		Employ an LAV in an area reconnaissance	8-40
0313-PAT-2404		Employ an LAV-25 in a zone reconnaissance mission	8-41
0313-TRNG-2501		Manage the LAV-25 Turret Trainer	8-41
0313-TRNG-2502		Manage the LAV PGS	8-42
0313-TRNG-2503		Manage the LAV-25 sub-caliber training	8-42
0313-TRNG-2504		Evaluate the LAV Gunners Skills Test (LGST)	8-43
0313-TRNG-2505		Evaluate LAV-25 preliminary gunnery training	8-44
0313-TRNG-2506		Evaluate LAV-25 basic gunnery training	8-44
0313-TRNG-2507		Evaluate LAV-25 sustainment gunnery training	8-45
0313-TRNG-2508		Evaluate LAV-25 intermediate gunnery training	8-46
0313-TRNG-2509		Conduct remedial LAV-25 gunnery training	8-46
0313-TRNG-2510		Install/disassemble the LAV-FIST to an LAV-25	8-47
0313-TRNG-2511		Perform LAV-FIST operational procedures	8-47
0313-TRNG-2512		Evaluate LAV-FIST crew performance data	8-48
0313-TRNG-2513		Perform troubleshooting procedures on the LAV-FIST	8-48
0313-TRNG-2514		Perform maintenance procedures on the LAV-FIST	8-49
0313-TRNG-2515		Perform emergency procedures on the LAV-FIST	8-50
0313-NBC-2601		Operate the LAV in an NBC environment	8-50
0313-NBC-2602		Operate LAV NBC equipment	8-51
0313-PMCS-2701		Supervise maintenance of the LAV	8-51
0313-VOPS-2702		Direct recovery of the LAV	8-52
0313-WPNS-2801		Engage multiple targets with the LAV-25	8-53
0313-WPNS-2802		Direct the fires of the LAV-25	8-54
0313-WPNS-2803		Manage the LAV Precision Gunnery System (PGS)	8-55
0313-WPNS-2804		Establish firing positions for the LAV-25	8-55
0313-WPNS-2805		Manage the LAV-25 sub-caliber training	8-56
0313-WPNS-2806		Evaluate the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST)	8-57
0313-WPNS-2807		Evaluate LAV-25 preliminary gunnery training	8-57
0313-WPNS-2808		Evaluate LAV-25 basic gunnery training	8-58
0313-WPNS-2809		Evaluate LAV-25 sustainment gunnery training	8-59

0313-WPNS-2810		Evaluate LAV-25 intermediate gunnery training	8-59
0313-WPNS-2811		Manage the LAV-25 turret trainer	8-60
		2000 LEVEL 0303	
0303-MNVR-2101		Lead a tactical movement	8-61
0303-MOBL-2102		Lead an LAV unit in a tactical road march	8-61
0303-OFF-2201		Lead a LAV platoon in a raid	8-62
0303-OFF-2202		Lead a LAV platoon in a movement to contact	8-63
0303-OFF-2203		Lead a LAV platoon in offensive operations	8-63
0303-OFF-2204		Direct a passage of lines as a moving unit	8-64
0303-OFF-2205		Employ the LAV-AT in support of offensive operations	8-65
0303-OFF-2206		Employ the LAV-M in support of offensive operations	8-65
0303-DEF-2301		Direct LAV assembly area operations	8-66
0303-DEF-2302		Assist a passage of lines as a stationary unit	8-66
0303-DEF-2303		Establish LAV platoon battle positions	8-67
0303-DEF-2304		Lead a LAV platoon in a screening operation	8-67
0303-DEF-2305		Lead a LAV platoon in security operations	8-68
0303-DEF-2306		Develop a fire plan sketch for a LAV section/platoon	8-69
0303-DEF-2307		Lead a LAV platoon in defensive operations	8-70
0303-DEF-2308		Employ the LAV-M in support of defensive operations	8-71
0303-DEF-2309		Employ the LAV-AT in support of defensive operations	8-71
0303-PAT-2401		Lead an LAV unit in a route reconnaissance	8-72
0303-PAT-2402		Lead an LAV unit in a zone reconnaissance	8-73
0303-PAT-2403		Lead an LAV unit in an area reconnaissance	8-73
0303-TAC-2404		Lead LAV urban operations	8-74
0303-TAC-2405		Lead a LAV platoon in reconnaissance operations	8-75
0303-FSPT-2601		Supervise operation of a LAV-M Mortar Fire Direction Center (FDC)	8-76
0303-PMCS-2701		Monitor Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the LAV	8-76
0303-VOPS-2702		Supervise vehicle inspection of LAV unit	8-77
0303-WPNS-2801		Direct LAV platoon/section fires	8-78
0303-LOG-2901		Direct resupply of a unit	8-79

8006. 1000-LEVEL 0313 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

0313-MOBL-1101: Conduct a tactical road march

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV, a mission that requires a tactical road march and references.

STANDARD: By departing from the start point (SP) and moving through subsequent checkpoints and release point (RP) at the stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for the road march.
2. Conduct the march using the formation appropriate to the enemy situation.
3. Effect coordination at control points.
4. Direct actions at halts.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-COMM-1501: Communicate using LAV intercom equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a member of a crew, given a LAV in a field environment, a CVC helmet and references.

STANDARD: To effectively communicate with another crewman.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure master switch is on.
2. Connect the helmet cord to the quick disconnect plug of the yo-yo cord.
3. Plug short connection of yo-yo cord into right side of the intercom control box and the long connection into the left.
4. Adjust the controls of the AM-7162 Audio Amplifier to their required positions.

4. Perform during operations PMCS on the LAV-25 hull and turret.
5. Perform after operations PMCS on the LAV-25 hull and turret.
6. Perform weekly PMCS on the LAV-25 hull and turret.
7. Perform monthly PMCS on the LAV-25 hull and turret.
8. Lubricate the hull and turret.
9. Clean communications equipment in the LAV-25 hull and turret.
10. Inspect communications equipment in the LAV-25 hull and turret.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 2. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
-

0313-PMCS-1702: Perform PMCS on the LAV hull

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As part of a crew, given an SL-3 complete LAV-25, appropriate equipment, cleaning gear and technical manuals.

STANDARD: To identify and correct discrepancies and defects.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean the LAV hull.
2. Inspect the LAV hull.
3. Perform before PMCS on the LAV hull.
4. Perform during PMCS on the LAV hull.
5. Perform after PMCS on the LAV hull.
6. Perform weekly PMCS on the LAV hull.
7. Perform monthly PMCS on the LAV hull.
8. Lubricate the LAV hull.
9. Clean the intercommunication equipment in the LAV hull.

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
2. LI 08652-12A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Hull
3. LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
4. LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Turret
5. LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
6. LI 08652A-12A LAV-AT
7. LI 08654A-12A LAV-M
8. LI 08655B-12 Lubrication Instruction Light Armored Vehicle, Mortar, LAV-M
9. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
10. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
11. TM 08650A-10A LAV-C2

12. TM 08652A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Turret
 13. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
 14. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT
 15. TM 08652B-10/2A Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Automotive Hull
 16. TM 08654B-10A LAV-L
 17. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M
-

0313-PMCS-1703: Perform PMCS on the LAV turret

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As part of a crew, given a SL-3 complete LAV-25, appropriate equipment, cleaning gear and technical manuals.

STANDARD: To identify and correct discrepancies and defects.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean the LAV turret.
2. Inspect the LAV turret.
3. Perform before operation PMCS on the LAV turret.
4. Perform during operation PMCS on the LAV turret.
5. Perform after operation PMCS on the LAV turret.
6. Perform weekly PMCS on the LAV turret.
7. Perform monthly PMCS on the LAV turret.
8. Lubricate the LAV turret.

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08594B-12-2A LAV-25
 2. LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
 3. LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
 4. LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Turret
 5. NTSC P-5601
 6. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0313-PMCS-1704: Perform PMCS on the M242 25mm automatic gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETTS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M242 25mm automatic gun, assistant, appropriate equipment and tools, USMC approved cleaning materials, and the reference.

STANDARD: To ensure weapon functions as designed and is clear of dirt and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the gun.
2. Disassemble the gun into the three main assemblies.
3. Disassemble the receiver into its sub-assemblies.
4. Clean the assemblies and sub-assemblies.
5. Inspect the assemblies and sub-assemblies.
6. Lubricate the assemblies and sub-assemblies.
7. Assemble the receiver assembly.
8. Perform a functions check.
9. Install the weapon into the turret.
10. Report any discrepancies to organizational maintenance personnel.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0313-PMCS-1705: Perform PMCS on the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun, appropriate equipment and tools, USMC approved cleaning material, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the weapon functions and is clear of dirt and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the machinegun.
2. Remove the machinegun from the turret.
3. Disassemble the machinegun into its eight major groups.
4. Clean the machinegun.
5. Inspect the machinegun.
6. Lubricate the machinegun.
7. Assemble the machinegun.
8. Perform a safety/functions check.
9. Install the machinegun into the turret.
10. Report any discrepancies to organizational maintenance personnel.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

0313-PMCS-1706: Perform PMCS on the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun, appropriate equipment and tools, USMC approved cleaning material, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the weapon functions and is clear of dirt and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the machinegun.
2. Remove the machinegun from the pintle.
3. Disassemble the machinegun into its eight major groups.
4. Clean the machinegun.
5. Inspect the machinegun.
6. Lubricate the machinegun.
7. Assemble the machinegun.
8. Perform a safety functions check.
9. Install the machinegun on the pintle.
10. Report any discrepancies to organizational maintenance personnel.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

0313-PMCS-1707: Perform PMCS on the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, appropriate equipment, USMC approved cleaning material, and reference.

STANDARD: To ensure the launcher functions and is clear of dirt and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the launcher.
2. Clean the launcher tubes.
3. Inspect the launcher tubes.
4. Report any discrepancies to organizational maintenance personnel.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0313-PMCS-1708: Maintain an ordnance vehicle logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an ordnance vehicle logbook, vehicle usage data and the reference.

STANDARD: To provide accurate records.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Enter the appropriate data on the daily page.
2. Enter the appropriate data on the monthly page.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 4700-15/1G Maintenance Record Procedures
-

0313-PMCS-1709: Maintain a weapon record book

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a weapon record book, weapon usage data and the reference.

STANDARD: To provide accurate records.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Enter appropriate data into weapons record book.
2. Enter a cumulative total for the number of rounds fired.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 4700-15/1G Maintenance Record Procedures
-

0313-PMCS-1710: Maintain the vehicle SL-3 equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV and the appropriate SL-3 listing.

STANDARD: To ensure all equipment is accounted for and serviceable.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean the vehicle SL-3 equipment.
2. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment.
3. Inventory the vehicle SL-3 equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. SL-3 08594A LAV-25
 2. SL-3 08650A LAV C2
 3. SL-3 08652A LAV-AT
 4. SL-3 08654A LAV-L
 5. SL-3 08655A LAV-M
 6. TM 4700-15/1G Maintenance Record Procedures
-

0313-VOPS-1710: Drive an LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV under multiple conditions, the technical manual, and a vehicle commander.

STANDARD: To a specified location without injury to the crew, damage to the vehicle, or loss of control of the vehicle.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform before operational checks.
2. Start the engine.
3. Warm up the engine.
4. Place the vehicle in motion.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Locate the four fixed fire suppression system actuators and the two portable fire extinguishers.
2. Simulate how to activate each of the four fixed fire suppression system actuators.
3. Identify the areas of the vehicle that the halon is directed when each of the four fixed fire suppression system actuators are used.
4. Simulate the use of the portable fire extinguishers.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 3. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
-

0313-VOPS-1713: Recover a disabled LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a member of a LAV crew, given a disabled LAV, an additional LAV to assist in the recovery and references.

STANDARD: To a designated location without injury to personnel or damage to the vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. List in writing the eight safety steps.
2. Erect a two point rigging.
3. Using appropriate hand and arm signals, winch in the disabled LAV.
4. Disconnect the two point rigging.
5. Stow the winch cable and all other gear used in the recovery.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 3. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
-

0313-WPNS-1801: Load the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, L8A1/A3 smoke grenades, and the reference.

STANDARD: To provide the vehicle with smoke grenades.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn vehicle and turret power off.
2. Lock the turret.
3. Turn the grenade launcher switches off.
4. Insert grenades into the M257 grenade launcher.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	20

0313-WPNS-1802: Unload the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, L8A1/A3 smoke grenades, and the reference.

STANDARD: To clear the grenade launcher.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn vehicle and turret power off.
2. Lock the turret.
3. Turn the grenade launcher switches off.
4. Remove grenades from the M257 grenade launcher.
5. Stow grenades.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	20

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

0313-WPNS-1803: Load the M242 25mm automatic gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, 210 25mm dummy rounds, appropriate tools and the references.

STANDARD: To ready the weapon for firing, in a time limit of 10 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct the pre-fire checklists.
2. Power down the turret.
3. Clear the weapon.
4. Place the weapon in sear.
5. Place the weapon on safe.
6. Connect the feed and link chutes.
7. Load HE ammunition into the ready box.
8. Load AP ammunition into the ready box.
9. Forward HE ammunition to the feeder two clicks.
10. Forward the AP ammunition into the feeder one click.
11. Cycle the ghost round.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A967 Cartridge, 25mm Dummy M794 Linked	210

0313-WPNS-1804: Unload the M242 25mm automatic gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, 210 25mm dummy rounds, appropriate tools, and technical manuals.

STANDARD: To clear the weapon.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Power down the turret.
2. Place the weapon on safe.
3. Lock the turret.
4. Remove the link chutes.
5. Unload HE ammunition from the feeder.
6. Unload AP ammunition from the feeder.
7. Ensure weapons system is clear.
8. Stow the ammunition.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A967 Cartridge, 25mm Dummy M794 Linked	210

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-14.1 under the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST) section. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one LGST station. Therefore the time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

0313-WPNS-1805: Load the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M240 coaxially-mounted machinegun and references.

STANDARD: To ready the weapon to fire in a time limit of 5 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Power down the turret.
2. Lock the turret.
3. Clear the weapon.
4. Place the weapon safeties on safe.
5. Load the coax ready box.
6. Secure the forward end of the ammunition to the feed tray.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	400

0313-WPNS-1806: Unload the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M240 coaxially-mounted machinegun loaded with 400 rounds of ammunition and the references.

STANDARD: So the weapon is unloaded safely.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Power down the turret.
2. Place the weapon on safe.
3. Remove the ammunition from the M240.
4. Clear the M240.
5. Remove the ammunition from the feed chute.
6. Remove the ammunition from the coax ready box.
7. Stow ammunition.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	400

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-14.1 under the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST) section. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one LGST station. Therefore, the time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

0313-WPNS-1807: Load the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M240 variant pintle-mounted machinegun, 200 rounds of ammunition, and the references.

STANDARD: To ready the weapon to fire in a time limit of 2 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place the weapon on safe.
2. Clear the weapon.
3. Attach the ammunition can to the gun cradle.
4. Secure forward end of the ammunition belt to the feed tray.
5. Load the weapon.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	200

0313-WPNS-1808: Unload the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed M240 variant pintle-mounted machinegun loaded with 200 rounds of ammunition and the references.

STANDARD: To clear the weapon.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place the weapon on safe.
2. Remove the ammunition from the weapon.
3. Clear the weapon.

4. Remove the ammunition can from the gun cradle.
5. Stow ammunition.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	200

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-14.1 under the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST) section. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one LGST station. Therefore the time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

0313-WPNS-1809: Boresight the M242 25mm automatic gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a member of a crew, given an LAV-25 with an installed M242 25mm automatic gun, boresight kit, 25mm adapter, and the references.

STANDARD: To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the weapon.
2. Install boresight adapter, telescope and red streamer.
3. Lay main gun in on a target 1,000 meters away.
4. Turn deflection and elevation knobs to position gunner's sight to aim at the same point as the main gun.
5. Set the deflection and elevation collars to midscale (4).
6. Repeat step five for commander's daysight.
7. Manually move the gun to lay the daysight reticle battlesight circle on center mass of the target.
8. Turn on and adjust the vehicle commander's night sight to see the aiming point.
9. Set the scaled collars on the night sight deflection and elevation knobs to midscale (4).
10. Turn on and adjust the gunner's thermal sight to see the aiming point of the target.

11. Adjust the thermal sight boresight switch to align the NFOV battlesight circle of the thermal sight reticle on the same aiming point of the target as the daysight battlesight circle.
12. Adjust the boresight switch to align the WFOV thermal sight reticle battlesight circle to the aiming point of the target.
13. Remove the boresight adapter, telescope, and red streamer.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-14.1 under the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST) section. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one LGST station. Therefore the time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

0313-WPNS-1810: Boresight the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with a boresighted 25mm automatic gun and an installed M240 coaxially-mounted machinegun, boresight kit, and the references.

STANDARD: To achieve point of aim/point of impact.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear all turret mounted weapons.
2. Place all turret mounted weapons on safe.
3. Locate a target at 1000 meters.
4. Ensure the turret drive select lever is in manual mode.
5. Manually move the turret/guns to place the daysight reticle boresight cross on the aiming point of the target.
6. Install the adapter, boresight telescope, and red streamer into the barrel of the coaxial-mounted machinegun.
7. Adjust the gun elevation and azimuth drive nuts to align the telescope crosshair with the aiming point on the target.
8. Remove the adapter, telescope, and red streamer.

REFERENCES :

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

RANGE/TRAINING AREA :

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS : There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-14.1 under the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST) section. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one LGST station. Therefore the time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

0313-WPNS-1811 : Zero the M242 25mm automatic gun

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 3 months

BILLETS : Vehicle Crewman

GRADES : PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING : FORMAL

CONDITION : Given an LAV-25 with an installed and boresighted M242 25mm automatic gun, 25mm ammunition, a target at 1000 meters, and the references.

STANDARD : So the gunner confirms the weapons systems boresight.

PERFORMANCE STEPS :

1. Upload the 25mm automatic gun.
2. Identify a 1000 meter target.
3. Prepare the system for firing.
4. Manually elevate and traverse the gun in a "G" pattern to position the appropriate 1000 meter range reticle sight point on the target aiming point.
5. Fire one round at the target with the auxiliary trigger.
6. Repeat steps four and five until a group is acquired.
7. Using the elevation and deflection knobs move the 1,000 meter range reticle sight point to the center of the impacts.
8. Repeat step four.
9. Press the auxiliary trigger and fire one check round.
10. If the check round is unsatisfactory, repeat steps four through 10.

REFERENCES :

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	10

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17660 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Stationary Gunnery Range

0313-WPNS-1812: Zero the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 on a level surface with an installed and boresighted M240 coaxially-mounted machinegun, ammunition, a target at 800 meters, and the references.

STANDARD: To confirm boresight on the weapon.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the weapon for firing.
2. Using the daysight, aim in on a target 800 meters away with 1,400 meter crosshairs on the HE side.
3. Fire a 10 round burst at the target and note the center of the impacts.
4. Clear the weapon and place it on safe.
5. Install the boresight telescope, adapter, and red streamer into the gun barrel.
6. Manually move the turret so the boresight telescope crosshairs are in the center of the impacts.
7. Using the azimuth and elevation drive nuts, move the coax until the boresight telescope is aiming at center mass of the target.
8. Remove the boresight telescope, adapter, and red streamer from the barrel and repeat steps three through seven until the weapon is zeroed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	20

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17581 Machine Gun Field Fire Range

0313-WPNS-1813: Engage targets with the M242 25mm automatic gun using precision gunnery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an uploaded and zeroed M242, targets outside of battlesight range, appropriate fire commands, in a field environment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Announce "identified" when target is acquired.
2. Select the appropriate ammunition.
3. Aim at the target using the sight reticle stadia lines.
4. Fire a three round burst at the target.
5. Announce an observation.
6. Make a direct fire adjustment based upon the observation.
7. Fire a three round burst at the target.
8. Repeat steps five through seven until target is destroyed or vehicle commander announces "cease fire".

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	108
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	111
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	650

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is a gunner and vehicle commander (during individual engagements) task that will be performed to standard on tables 10-12.

0313-WPNS-1814: Engage targets with the M242 25mm automatic gun using battlesight gunnery

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an uploaded and zeroed M242, targets inside of battlesight range, appropriate fire command, in a field environment.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Announce "identified" when target is acquired.
2. Select the appropriate ammunition.
3. Aim at the target using the sight reticle battlesight circle.
4. Fire a three round burst at the target.
5. Announce an observation.
6. Make a direct fire adjustment based upon the observation.
7. Fire a three round burst at the target.
8. Repeat steps five through seven until target is destroyed or vehicle commander announces "cease fire".

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	108
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	200
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	135

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is a gunner and vehicle commander (during individual engagements) task that will be performed to standard on tables 8, 9, 11 and 12.

0313-WPNS-1815: Engage targets with the M240 7.62mm coaxially mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with an installed boresighted and zeroed coaxial mounted machinegun loaded with a belt of 7.62mm ammunition and an appropriate fire command.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Announce "identified".
2. Fire and adjust 20 to 30 round bursts until given "target-cease fire" by the vehicle commander.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	111
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	550
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	108

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is a LAV-25 gunner task that will be performed to standard on table gunnery.

0313-WPNS-1816: Engage targets with the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV with the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun installed and loaded with a belt of 7.62mm ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Announce "240".
2. Fire at targets using a short burst.
3. Fire and adjust 20 to 30 round bursts.
4. Announce "240 complete".

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	111
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	550
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	108

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is a LAV-25 vehicle commander task that will be performed to standard on tables 8, 9, 11 and 12.

0313-WPNS-1817: Fire the M257 smoke grenade launchers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV loaded with L8A1/A3 smoke grenades.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient the turret in the direction where the smoke is needed.
2. Announce "grenade launcher".
3. The crew secures all hatches.
4. Turn the weapon power circuit breaker on.
5. Turn the grenade launcher switch(es) on.
6. Announce "fire".
7. Fire the grenade launcher(s).
8. Announce "grenades launched".

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

0313-WPNS-1818: Perform immediate action procedures for the M242 25mm automatic gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with a stalled M242 25mm automatic gun and references.

STANDARD: To restore the weapon to a firing condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Apply misfire procedures.
2. Apply remedial action.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
 2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0313-WPNS-1819: Perform immediate action procedures for the M240 7.62mm coaxially-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETTS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with a M240 coaxially-mounted machinegun that has misfired and references.

STANDARD: To restore the weapon to a firing condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the cause for failing to fire.
2. Apply misfire procedures.
3. Apply immediate action procedures.
4. Apply remedial action.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

0313-WPNS-1820: Perform immediate action procedures for the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with a M240 variant pintle-mounted machinegun that has misfired and references.

STANDARD: To restore the weapon to a firing condition.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the cause for failing to fire.
2. Apply misfire procedures.
3. Apply immediate action procedures.
4. Apply remedial action.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 2. TM 08670A/09712A-10/1B (Army TM 9-1005-313-10) Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240
-

0313-WPNS-1821: Perform immediate action procedures for the M257 smoke grenade launchers

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 with smoke grenades that failed to launch and the reference.

STANDARD: To enable the vehicle to provide covering smoke.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Repeat firing procedures.
2. Turn off all turret power.
3. Wait 30 minutes, then remove grenades.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25 and a mission that requires him to react to contact and the references.

STANDARD: To respond to enemy action by maneuvering the unit and conducting battle drills.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify an enemy force.
2. Respond to the enemy force.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-OFF-2202: Employ an LAV-25 in a movement to contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a movement to contact and references.

STANDARD: To a designated location.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Select a route that will not restrict vehicle movement.
2. Maintain security.
3. Maintain contact with the enemy.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-OFF-2203: Employ an LAV-25 in a limited objective attack

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a limited objective attack and the reference.

STANDARD: To destroy the enemy and/or seize the objective with minimal loss of equipment and personnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct movement to objective area.
2. Conduct the attack.
3. Consolidate forces.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-OFF-2204: Employ an LAV-25 in a raid

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a raid and the reference.

STANDARD: To attack a limited enemy objective and return to friendly positions with minimal loss of personnel and equipment and without becoming decisively engaged.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconnoiter in the direction of the attack from the point of departure to the objective.
2. Establish visual contact on raid objective.
3. Engage raid objective as ordered.
4. Withdraw along ordered egress route.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-OFF-2205: Conduct a passage of lines as a moving unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a passage of lines as a moving unit and references.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and uninterrupted passage.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communications with a stationary unit.
2. Coordinate information on friendly/enemy situation (as required).
3. Coordinate location of passage points and lanes.
4. Exchange appropriate information at contact points.
5. Conduct the passage as ordered.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-DEF-2301: Develop a range card for the LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0303 and 0369 serving as a vehicle commander.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a vehicle's defensive position in a tactical environment, military topographical map, and compass.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Label primary position of the vehicle using military symbols.
2. Indicate primary sectors of fire.
3. Indicate the principal direction of fire (PDF) for the M242.
4. Indicate magnetic north.
5. List marginal information.
6. Indicate positions of LPs/OPs, as required.
7. Indicate dead space and how it is covered, as required.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
-

0313-DEF-2302: Employ an LAV-25 in a battle position

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a battle position and references.

STANDARD: Against the enemy's deliberate attack employing supporting arms, obstacles and mines, and limited counterattacks as appropriate to disrupt his formations, interdict his supplies and reserves, and defeat his assault with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish the primary vehicle position.
2. Establish an alternate vehicle position, as required.
3. Establish a supplementary vehicle position, as required.
4. Establish local security.
5. Establish routes of withdrawal.
6. Establish sectors of fires.
7. Prepare range cards.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-DEF-2303: Employ an LAV-25 in a screening operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a screening operation and references.

STANDARD: To maintain surveillance on the enemy, provide early warning to the higher commander, and impede and harass the enemy's advance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain continuous surveillance of assigned NAIs or high speed avenues of approach into the sector.
2. Provide early warning of enemy approach.
3. Identify and destroy enemy reconnaissance units within your capabilities.
4. Maintain contact with the enemy.
5. Report enemy activity, as required.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-DEF-2304: Conduct a passage of lines as a stationary unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a passage of lines as a stationary unit and references.

STANDARD: To enable the moving unit to conduct a sage and uninterrupted passage.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communications with the passing unit.
2. Man contact points.
3. Coordinate location of passage points and lanes.
4. Exchange appropriate information at contact points.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-TAC-2401: Employ scout team for local security

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0303 and 0369 serving as a vehicle commander.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander, given a LAV-25, scout team with a mission and references.

STANDARD: In order to provide early warning and protection from enemy threat and to cover dead space identified with vehicle's range card.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop a plan.
2. Coordinate with your scout team.
3. Employ the scout team.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0313-PAT-2402: Employ an LAV-25 in a route reconnaissance mission

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires a route reconnaissance and the reference.

STANDARD: To obtain information on a designed route.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the trafficability of the route.
2. Reconnoiter terrain that dominates the route.
3. Reconnoiter built up areas along the route.
4. Reconnoiter lateral routes.
5. Classify bridges along the route.
6. Locate crossing sites near bridges on the route.
7. Classify overpasses, underpasses, and culverts along the route.
8. Reconnoiter defiles along the route.
9. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route.
10. Locate a bypass around built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas.
11. Report route information.
12. Report enemy forces that can influence movement along the route.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0313-PAT-2403: Employ an LAV in an area reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given an LAV-25, a mission that requires an area reconnaissance and the reference.

STANDARD: To obtain information on a designated area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconnoiter terrain within the area.
2. Classify bridges within the area.
3. Locate crossing sites near bridges within the area.
4. Classify overpasses, underpasses, and culverts within the area.
5. Locate mines, obstacles, and barriers within the area.

2. Establish crew data base.
3. Create scenarios based on crew deficiencies.
4. Execute pre-programmed scenario.
5. Execute modified scenario.
6. Analyze crew performance.
7. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crew.
8. Record crew performance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
 2. NTSC P-5601
-

0313-TRNG-2502: Manage the LAV PGS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an appropriate number of LAV-25s and crews, one LAV PGS per LAV-25, a TDRS computer and TDRS cards, control gun, technical and doctrinal manuals and crew gunnery historical data.

STANDARD: To train the LAV-25 crew in combat and panel gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the installation of the LAV PGS.
2. Set up TDRS cards for mode of gunnery.
3. Set up targets for panel gunnery, as required.
4. Brief crew on exercise.
5. Use control gun as required.
6. Evaluate crew duties during exercise.
7. Download TDRS cards into the TDRS computer.
8. Analyze TDRS data.
9. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crew.
10. Record crew performance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
 2. TM 9-6920-710-12&P-2 Operator Unit Maintenance Manual including repair parts and special tools list for the precision gunnery system for the LAV-25
 3. TM 9-6920-711-12&P-1 Operator Unit Maintenance Manual including repair parts & special tools list for the control gun and data retrieval system
-

0313-TRNG-2503: Manage the LAV-25 sub-caliber training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 and crew, one LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, an M16A2 service rifle, a magazine, ammunition, and the reference.

STANDARD: To train the LAV-25 crew on a scaled range with the M16A2, the laser, and the M240.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop a scaled range plan on paper.
2. Supervise the installation of the LAV sub-caliber device.
3. Set up targets for scaled gunnery.
4. Zero the sub-caliber device using the point of aim method, as required.
5. Zero the sub-caliber device using the stout board method, as required.
6. Brief crew on exercise.
7. Evaluate crew performance during exercise.
8. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crew.
9. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	10
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	10

0313-TRNG-2504: Evaluate the LAV Gunners Skills Test (LGST)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-25, stop watch and the reference.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish an LGST site.
2. Administer the LGST.
3. Record individual performance for each station.
4. Conduct after action reviews for each station.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	400
A967 Cartridge, 25mm Dummy M794 Linked	210

0313-TRNG-2505: Evaluate LAV-25 preliminary gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 and crewman, a manipulation board, an LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, a scaled range and targets, binoculars, stopwatch, thermal tape or thermal targets, ammunition and the reference.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Brief crewmen on the preliminary exercise.
2. Evaluate turret manipulation.
3. Evaluate target acquisition.
4. Evaluate range determination.
5. Evaluate thermal/passive sight employment.
6. Evaluate pintle mount familiarization.
7. Evaluate crewmen's performance during preliminary training.
8. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
9. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

0313-TRNG-2506: Evaluate LAV-25 basic gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 and crewman, precision and battlesight gunnery manipulation boards, an LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, an M16A2, a scaled range and targets, a stopwatch, thermal tape or thermal targets, ammunition, and the references.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the installation of the LAV sub-caliber device.
2. Set up targets for scaled gunnery.
3. Zero the sub-caliber device using the point of aim method, as required.
4. Zero the sub-caliber device using the stout board method, as required.
5. Brief crewmen on the tables.
6. Evaluate Table 1.
7. Evaluate Table 2.
8. Evaluate Table 3.
9. Evaluate crewmen's performance during basic gunnery.
10. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
11. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

0313-TRNG-2507: Evaluate LAV-25 sustainment gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 and crew, an LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, an M-16A2, ammunition, a simulated NBC environment, 25mm ammunition, a scaled range and targets, a stopwatch, thermal targets or thermal tape, and the reference.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the installation of the LAV sub-caliber device as required.
2. Set up targets for scaled gunnery.
3. Zero the sub-caliber device using the point of aim method, as required.
4. Zero the sub-caliber device using the stout board method, as required.
5. Brief crewmen on the tables.
6. Evaluate Table 4.
7. Evaluate Table 5.
8. Evaluate Table 6.
9. Evaluate Table 7.
10. Evaluate Table 8.
11. Evaluate crewmen's performance during sustainment gunnery.

12. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
13. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0313-TRNG-2508: Evaluate LAV-25 intermediate gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 and crew, ammunition as outlined in each table, a multi-purpose range complex, a stopwatch and thermal tape or thermal targets.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Evaluate Table 9.
2. Evaluate Table 10.
3. Evaluate Table 11.
4. Evaluate Table 12.
5. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
6. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0313-TRNG-2509: Conduct remedial LAV-25 gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the required resources for the level of training and appropriate amounts of ammunition, an LAV-25 and crew and performance data.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze overall crew performance.
2. Develop remedial training plan.
3. Establish remedial training sites.

4. Conduct remedial training.
5. Analyze crew performance.
6. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
7. Repeat steps 1 through 6, as required.
8. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0313-TRNG-2510: Install/disassemble the LAV-FIST to an LAV-25

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, LAV-FIST, crew and appropriate technical manuals.

STANDARD: To enable training.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inventory LAV-FIST equipment.
2. Inspect LAV-FIST equipment.
3. Prepare the LAV for "Initial Vehicle Conditions".
4. Install commander/gunner display assemblies.
5. Install gun barrel support.
6. Install driver's display assembly.
7. Install crew station monitor cables.
8. Install vehicle interface cables.
9. Install driver's audio system.
10. Install helmet mounted display.
11. Install appended items.
12. Install vehicle interface.
13. Install instructor's station.
14. Install IOS cables.
15. Disassemble in reverse order of installation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
 2. TM 10582A10-2 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
-

0313-TRNG-2511: Perform LAV-FIST operational procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, LAV-FIST, crew and appropriate technical manual.

STANDARD: To conduct training.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Power up the system.
2. Log-on to the system.
3. Run LAV-FIST built test.
4. Set up the initialization screen.
5. Coordinate an exercise via the geographical instructor's interface screen.
6. End the exercise.
7. Power down the LAV-FIST.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
-

0313-TRNG-2512: Evaluate LAV-FIST crew performance data

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, LAV-FIST, crew, crew data, and appropriate technical manual.

STANDARD: To ensure crew proficiency.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Download the data.
2. Consolidate the data.
3. Disseminate the data.
4. Conduct an after-action review (AAR).

REFERENCE:

1. TM 10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
-

0313-TRNG-2513: Perform troubleshooting procedures on the LAV-FIST

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, LAV-FIST, crew, and appropriate technical manual.

STANDARD: To restore the LAV-FIST to operation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify the malfunction.
2. Perform a test and/or inspection.
3. Perform corrective actions.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
-

0313-TRNG-2514: Perform maintenance procedures on the LAV-FIST

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, LAV-FIST, crew, and appropriate technical manuals.

STANDARD: To identify discrepancies and perform necessary adjustments.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform adjustment procedures.
2. Install velcro to day-sights.
3. Add paper to printer.
4. Perform bolt position indicator bulb replacement.
5. Perform manual position overlay replacement.
6. Perform battery lockout overlay replacement.
7. Perform driver's monitor replacement.
8. Perform turret monitor replacement.
9. Perform beam splitter replacement.
10. Perform headset replacement.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
-

0313-TRNG-2515: Perform emergency procedures on the LAV-FIST

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25, LAV-FIST, crew, and appropriate technical manual.

STANDARD: To restore safe operation of equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Evaluate personnel.
2. Treat casualties.
3. Protect equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
 2. TM 10582A10-2 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer (LAV-FIST)
-

0313-NBC-2601: Operate the LAV in an NBC environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a crewman, given an LAV, M42 protective mask, simulated NBC environment and references.

STANDARD: To enable the vehicle and crew to operate in an NBC environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the type of NBC threat presented.
2. Respond according to the type of threat encountered.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
 3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 4. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
-

0313-NBC-2602: Operate LAV NBC equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV, M42 gas mask, a CVC helmet and references.

STANDARD: The Marine must don and clear the gas mask, connect the microphone cord to the CVC helmet, and connect and disconnect the mask to the vehicle's NBC system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Stop breathing and stop the vehicle.
2. Remove CVC helmet.
3. Don and clear the M42 gas mask.
4. Connect the M42 gas mask to the LAV intercom system.
5. Put on CVC helmet.
6. Tell someone to open the spring clip on the NBC particulate cleaner.
7. Turn on the LAV NBC system.
8. Adjust the temperature of air from the M3 heater.
9. Connect the M42 gas mask to the M3 heater hose.
10. Turn off the LAV NBC system.
11. Disconnect the M42 gas mask from the LAV intercom system.
12. Disconnect the M42 gas mask from the LAV NBC system.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
 2. TM 3-4240-300-10-2 Chemical, Biological Mask, Combat Vehicle, M42
-

0313-PMCS-2701: Supervise maintenance of the LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369, 0313 NCO and 2147 NCO vehicle commanders. This event may apply to additional MOSs within the LAV unit based on respective mission role variants.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25, SL-3 equipment, cleaning gear and references.

STANDARD: So that all operator preventive maintenance is properly performed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise maintenance of the LAV hull
2. Supervise maintenance of the LAV turret (as applicable)
3. Supervise maintenance of the LAV SL-3 equipment
4. Supervise maintenance of the LAV communications equipment
5. Supervise maintenance of the LAV ordnance vehicle logbook
6. Supervise maintenance of the LAV weapons logbook (as applicable)

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08594B-12-2A LAV-25
2. LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
3. LI 08652-12A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Hull
4. LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
5. LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Turret
6. LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
7. LI 08652A-12A LAV-AT
8. LI 08654A-12A LAV-M
9. LI 08655B-12 Lubrication Instruction Light Armored Vehicle, Mortar, LAV-M
10. SL-3 08594A LAV-25
11. SL-3 08650A LAV C2
12. SL-3 08652A LAV-AT
13. SL-3 08654A LAV-L
14. SL-3 08655A LAV-M
15. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
16. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
17. TM 08650A-10A LAV-C2
18. TM 08652A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Turret
19. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
20. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT
21. TM 08652B-10/2A Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Automotive Hull
22. TM 08654B-10A LAV-L
23. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Also refer to LAV-RA1-SL-3-08651B for information pertaining to the LAV Recovery variant.

0313-VOPS-2702: Direct recovery of the LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0303, 0369, and 2147 serving as a vehicle commander.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As part of a LAV crew, given a disabled LAV, an additional LAV to assist in the recovery and the reference.

STANDARD: To a designated location without injury to personnel or damage to the vehicles.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. List in writing the eight safety steps.
2. Direct the erection of a one, two, or three-point rigging.
3. Using appropriate hand and arm signals, winch in the mired or disabled LAV.
4. Direct the disconnection of the one, two, or three-point rigging.
5. Direct the stowage of the winch cable and all other gear used in the retrieval.

REFERENCE:

1. FMFRP 4-19 Vehicle Recovery Operations
-

0313-WPNS-2801: Engage multiple targets with the LAV-25

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0303 and 0369 serving as a vehicle commander.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 with an uploaded and zeroed M242, M240 Coax, M240G swing-mount, and multiple targets that must be engaged in a field environment

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Acquire target(s).
2. Select the method of engagement.
3. Issue a simultaneous fire command.
4. Engage target(s) with the swing-mounted machinegun.
5. Terminate the swing-mounted machinegun engagement.
6. Assume control of the remaining engagements.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	18
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	18
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is a Cpl's task that will be performed to standard on gunnery tables.

0313-WPNS-2802: Direct the fires of the LAV-25

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0303 and 0369 serving as a vehicle commander. NOTE: Ammunition amounts will vary depending on threat type and frequency.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 with an uploaded, boresighted and zeroed M242 automatic gun, M240 coaxially-mounted machinegun, a realistic threat target array under multiple conditions and the reference.

STANDARD: To demonstrate mastery using both precision and battlesight engagements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Acquire target(s).
2. Select the method of engagement.
3. Issue the appropriate fire command.
4. Make observations.
5. Scan for additional targets.
6. Issue subsequent fire commands.
7. Terminate the engagement.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	18

A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked 18
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked 200

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

0313-WPNS-2803: Manage the LAV Precision Gunnery System (PGS)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This event applies to the qualified 0313 LAV Crew Evaluator (LCE) or 0313/0369 Master Gunner.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an appropriate number of LAV-25s and crews, one LAV PGS per LAV-25, a TDRS computer and TDRS cards, control gun, crew gunnery historical data and references.

STANDARD: To train the LAV-25 crew in combat and panel gunnery.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the installation of the LAV PGS.
2. Set up TDRS cards for mode of gunnery.
3. Set up targets for panel gunnery, as required.
4. Brief crew on exercise.
5. Use control gun as required.
6. Evaluate crew duties during exercise.
7. Download TDRS cards into the TDRS computer.
8. Analyze TDRS data.
9. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crew.
10. Record crew performance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
 2. TM 9-6920-710-12&P-2 Operator Unit Maintenance Manual including repair parts and special tools list for the precision gunnery system for the LAV-25
 3. TM 9-6920-711-12&P-1 Operator Unit Maintenance Manual including repair parts & special tools list for the control gun and data retrieval system
-

0313-WPNS-2804: Establish firing positions for the LAV-25

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0303 and 0369 serving as a vehicle commander.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV, tactical environment and the references.

STANDARD: To enable the vehicle to engage predetermined targets

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Select a primary firing position.
2. Select an alternate firing position.
3. Select supplementary positions.
4. Prepare a range card for each position.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0313-WPNS-2805: Manage the LAV-25 sub-caliber training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This event applies to the qualified 0313 LAV Crew Evaluator (LCE) or 0313/0369 Master Gunner.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 and crew, one LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, a M16A2 service rifle, a magazine, ammunition, and the reference.

STANDARD: To train the LAV-25 crew on a scaled range with the M16A2, the laser, and the M240.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop a scaled range plan on paper.
2. Supervise the installation of the LAV sub-caliber device.
3. Set up targets for scaled gunnery.
4. Zero the sub-caliber device using the point of aim method, as required.
5. Zero the sub-caliber device using the stout board method, as required.
6. Brief crew on exercise.
7. Evaluate crew performance during exercise.
8. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crew.
9. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	10
A059 Cartridge, 5.56mm Ball M855 10/Clip	10

0313-WPNS-2806: Evaluate the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This event applies to the qualified 0313 LAV Crew Evaluator (LCE) or 0313/0369 Master Gunner.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a SL-3 complete LAV-25 and stop watch.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish an LGST site.
2. Administer the LGST.
3. Record individual performance for each station.
4. Conduct after action reviews for each station.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	400
A967 Cartridge, 25mm Dummy M794 Linked	210

0313-WPNS-2807: Evaluate LAV-25 preliminary gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This event applies to the qualified 0313 LAV Crew Evaluator (LCE) or 0313/0369 Master Gunner.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 with crewman, manipulation board, LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, scaled range and targets, binoculars, stopwatch, thermal tape or thermal targets, L8A1/3 smoke grenades, M240G, and appropriate ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Brief crewmen on the preliminary exercise.
2. Evaluate turret manipulation.
3. Evaluate target acquisition.
4. Evaluate range determination.
5. Evaluate thermal/passive sight employment.
6. Evaluate pintle mount familiarization.
7. Evaluate crewmen's performance during preliminary training.
8. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
9. Record crew performance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
 2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0313-WPNS-2808: Evaluate LAV-25 basic gunnery training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

DESCRIPTION: This event applies to the qualified 0313 LAV Crew Evaluator (LCE) or 0313/0369 Master Gunner.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 and crewman, precision and battlesight gunnery manipulation boards, LAV-25 sub-caliber firing device, M16A2, scaled range and targets, stopwatch, thermal tape or thermal targets and appropriate ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the installation of the LAV sub-caliber device.
2. Set up targets for scaled gunnery.
3. Zero the sub-caliber device using the point of aim method, as required.
4. Zero the sub-caliber device using the stout board method, as required.
5. Brief crewmen on the tables.
6. Evaluate Table 1.
7. Evaluate Table 2.
8. Evaluate Table 3.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 and crew, ammunition as outlined in each table, multi-purpose range complex, stopwatch and thermal tape or thermal targets.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Evaluate Table 9.
2. Evaluate Table 10.
3. Evaluate Table 11.
4. Evaluate Table 12.
5. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crewmen.
6. Record crew performance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
 2. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0313-WPNS-2811: Manage the LAV-25 turret trainer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This event applies to the qualified 0313 LAV Crew Evaluator (LCE) or 0313/0369 Master Gunner.

BILLETS: Vehicle Commander

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 turret trainer with crew.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Initialize the turret trainer.
2. Establish crew database.
3. Create scenario based on crew deficiencies.
4. Execute pre-programmed scenario.
5. Execute modified scenario.
6. Analyze crew performance.
7. Conduct an after action review (AAR) with the crew.
8. Record crew performance.

REFERENCE:

1. NTSC P-5601

8008. 2000-LEVEL 0303 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

0303-MNVR-2101: Lead a tactical movement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 platoon with attachments, an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To facilitate speed when enemy contact is possible, maintain appropriate vehicle interval and rate of march as terrain allows, and maintain security and mutual support between elements.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Use covered and concealed routes.
2. Minimize dust signature.
3. Maintain interval between vehicles.
4. Avoid silhouetting the vehicles.
5. Do not drive forward out of Battle Positions (BPs) or vehicle fighting positions, reverse out of positions to avoid detection.
6. Scan the ground for disturbed earth or out-of-place features that may indicate mines.
7. Select appropriate formation and movement technique.
8. Employ over watch elements whenever possible.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-MOBL-2102: Lead an LAV unit in a tactical road march

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an order with a mission to conduct an LAV road march and the references.

STANDARD: By departing from the start point (SP) and moving through subsequent checkpoints and the release point (RP) at the stated time, speed, interval and order of march.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Organize and dispatch reconnaissance and quartering parties (as required).
3. Issue movement order.
4. Stage vehicles for movement.
5. Conduct movement.
6. Ensure vehicles move at the stated speed, time, interval, and order.
7. Maintain security during movement and at security halts.
8. Ensure unit arrives at the objective location at the prescribed time.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-OFF-2201: Lead a LAV platoon in a raid

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit and an order with a mission to conduct a LAV raid and references.

STANDARD: To attack a limited enemy objective and return to friendly positions with minimal loss of personnel and equipment and without becoming decisively engaged.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish a restricted fire area (RFA) around the raid area.
2. Reconnoiter in the direction of the attack from the point of departure to the objective.
3. Establish visual contact with the enemy.
4. Establish a base of fire element.
5. Establish a maneuver element.
6. Suppress the enemy force with long range direct fires.
7. Establish surveillance on enemy avenues.
8. Attack the enemy.
9. Withdraw the maneuver element.
10. Return to friendly lines.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 7-7J Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad
 4. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
-

0303-OFF-2202: Lead a LAV platoon in a movement to contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV platoon an operations order and references.

STANDARD: So the unit moves from the SP/FEBA toward the suspected enemy position using the most covered and concealed route, utilizing the movement formation that provides maximum security; and locate, isolate, and report the enemy's main lines.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain continuous security.
2. Gain and maintain contact with the enemy.
3. Report enemy activity.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 7-7J Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad
 4. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
 5. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0303-OFF-2203: Lead a LAV platoon in offensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-25 platoon with attachments and an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Initiate reconnaissance plan.
2. Initiate prearranged fires
3. Cross line of departure (LOD) at the specified time.
4. Report crossing of tactical control measures.

5. Overcome enemy forces enroute, without becoming decisively engaged or committing unnecessary forces.
6. Maintain status of units and positions to best influence the attack.
7. Adjust, shift, and cease direct and indirect fires to support successes.
8. Report status IAW unit SOP.
9. Upon consolidation receive ammo & casualty reports.
10. Arrange for resupply and casualty evacuation.
11. Issue fragmentary orders to units in preparation for follow-on missions.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 7-7J Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad
4. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
5. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reference 0302-OFF-1201 Plan and Execute a Unit's Offensive Operations for performance checklist.

0303-OFF-2204: Direct a passage of lines as a moving unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: As a vehicle commander within a platoon, given a LAV and a mission that requires a passage of lines as a moving unit and references.

STANDARD: To conduct a safe and uninterrupted passage per unit standing operating procedure.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communications with a stationary unit.
2. Coordinate information on friendly/enemy situation (as required).
3. Coordinate location of passage points and lanes.
4. Exchange appropriate information at contact points.
5. Conduct the passage as ordered.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
 3. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0303-OFF-2205: Employ the LAV-AT in support of offensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 4 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given LAV-AT(s) and an order with a task to support offensive operations.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/detach units per higher headquarters order.
3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the assault.
5. Displace as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack and exploitation.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-34 TOW Weapon System
 2. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
-

0303-OFF-2206: Employ the LAV-M in support of offensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 4 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given LAV-M(s), an order with a task to support offensive operations and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Planning and subsequent orders include: priority targets, priority of fires, scheme of maneuver, method of employment, method of displacement and rates of fire.
3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the attack.
5. Displace as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery

0303-DEF-2301: Direct LAV assembly area operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV unit and an order with an implied or specified mission to conduct assembly area operations and references.

STANDARD: Ensuring that there is local security so that no squad size elements can move within 300 meters of perimeter without detection; vehicle and individual positions are camouflaged within 45 minutes of occupation; there is lateral contact between vehicles; wire communications, vehicle range cards, element fire plan sketches are complete; chemical agent alarms are emplaced; CSS activities re conducted; and planning for subsequent operations is ongoing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear the area.
5. Direct the improvement and the marking of entrances, exits, and internal routes.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon

0303-DEF-2302: Assist a passage of lines as a stationary unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary LAV unit (reinforced), a moving LAV unit, and an order with a mission to conduct passage of lines as the stationary unit.

STANDARD: To enable the moving unit to conduct a safe and uninterrupted passage.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish communications with the passing unit.
2. Man contact points.
3. Coordinate location of passage points and lanes.
4. Exchange appropriate information at contact points.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0303-DEF-2303: Establish LAV platoon battle positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369 and the 0313 NCO.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV unit (reinforced), an order with a mission to establish battle positions and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the intent of the higher headquarters order and scheme of defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Assign primary vehicle positions.
3. Direct the assignment of sectors of fires.
4. Assign alternate/supplemental vehicle positions.
5. Establish route of withdrawal.
6. Coordinate supporting fires.
7. Coordinate with adjacent units.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-DEF-2304: Lead a LAV platoon in a screening operation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 4 months

DESCRIPTION: This event also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV unit (reinforced), an order with a mission to conduct a screening operation and references.

STANDARD: To maintain surveillance of the enemy, provide early warning to the higher commander, and impede and harass the enemy's advance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain continuous surveillance of assigned Named Areas of Interest (NAIs) and high speed avenues of approach into the sector.
2. Provide early warning of enemy approach.
3. Identify and destroy enemy reconnaissance units.
4. Maintain contact with the enemy.
5. Report friendly and enemy activity.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-DEF-2305: Lead a LAV platoon in security operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also applies to the 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV platoon with attachments an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire plans, if time permits; at a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
2. Employ supporting arms to disrupt enemy movement and establish suppression in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to destroy enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks as appropriate.

6. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
4. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
5. MCRP 3-16.6 Multiservice Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower (J-Fires)
6. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
7. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
8. MCWP 3-16 Techniques and Procedures for Fire Support Coordination
9. MCWP 3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling
10. MCWP 3-23.1 Close Air Support

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Cover and guard missions are not within a platoon's capability.

0303-DEF-2306: Develop a fire plan sketch for a LAV section/platoon

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task may also be performed by the 0313 NCO and 0369 vehicle commander serving as a section leader.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a section or more of vehicles' range cards in a tactical environment, military topographical map, and compass.

STANDARD: Per the references and unit standing operating procedures.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Label primary positions of the vehicle using military symbols.
2. Indicate primary sectors of fire.
3. Indicate the principal directions of fire (PDF) for each M242.
4. Establish interlocking fields of fire.
5. Indicate magnetic north.
6. List marginal information.
7. Indicate positions of LPs/Ops, as required.
8. Indicate dead space and how it is covered, as required.
9. Establish target reference points (TRP).

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad
-

0303-DEF-2307: Lead a LAV platoon in defensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also pertains to 0369.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV platoon with attachments, an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct map and leader's reconnaissance.
2. During the leaders reconnaissance the following tasks should be completed: establish local security through observation/listening posts; identify, assign, and mark vehicle positions; assign sectors of fire to each vehicle; identify and possibly emplace OP/LPs.
3. Return to ORP and brief the unit on any changes to the occupation plan.
4. Identify primary battle positions.
5. Produce range cards and section/platoon fire plan sketches.
6. Establish trigger lines, engagement criteria, and target precedence for all weapon systems.
7. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
8. Coordinate and ensure that the unit is tied in with adjacent units.
9. Plan for fires in support of the defense that include, but are not limited to, gaps in direct fire and dead space.
10. Register indirect FPF.
11. Submit list of targets to higher.
12. Receive target list from higher.
13. Collect fire plan sketches from subordinate units and refine positions as required.
14. Complete unit fire plan sketch.
15. Submit unit fire plan sketch to higher.
16. Initiate patrolling plan.
17. Emplace obstacles to disrupt, turn, fix, or block the movement of the enemy.
18. Emplace communication wire between the command post, the vehicle positions, and the observation posts/listening posts.
19. Identify alternate and supplementary positions.
20. Rehearse movement to alternate and supplementary positions.
21. Rehearse counter-attack plan.
22. Register final protective fires.
23. Develop sleep plan.
24. Continue to improve the defense.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
2. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See 0302-DEF-1301: Plan and execute defensive operations for performance checklist.

0303-DEF-2308: Employ the LAV-M in support of defensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 4 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given LAV-M(s), an order with a task to support defensive operations and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the higher commander's intent and scheme of defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Planning and subsequent orders include: location of FPFs and preplanned targets, method of employment, rates of fire and signals to begin and cease fire on FPFs.
3. Position to support the defense.
4. Register targets (time permitting).
5. Provide fires to support the defense.
6. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 23-90 Mortars
 3. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
 4. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-DEF-2309: Employ the LAV-AT in support of defensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 4 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given LAV-AT(s), an order with a task to support defensive operations and the references.

STANDARD: To support the higher commander's intent and scheme of defense.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/detach units per higher headquarters order.
3. Position to support the defense.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
5. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
-

0303-PAT-2401: Lead an LAV unit in a route reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), a route, an order with a mission to conduct a route reconnaissance and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of dominant terrain along the route.
3. Conduct reconnaissance of built-up areas along the route.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of lateral routes.
5. Conduct evaluation of bridges along the route.
6. Locate crossing sites near bridges along the route.
7. Conduct reconnaissance of overpasses, underpasses, and culverts along the route.
8. Conduct reconnaissance of defiles along the route.
9. Ensure mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route are located and marked.
10. Ensure built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas are marked and bypassed.
11. Ensure forces and groups that can influence movement along the route are reported.
12. Maintain security throughout reconnaissance.
13. Report route information.
14. Complete route reconnaissance.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-PAT-2402: Lead an LAV unit in a zone reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an assigned zone, and an order with a mission to conduct a zone reconnaissance.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Direct the reconnaissance of terrain within the zone.
3. Determine the trafficability of all routes within the zone.
4. Direct the evaluation of bridges within the zone.
5. Ensure crossing sites near bridges in the zone are located.
6. Direct the evaluation of overpasses, underpasses, and culverts within the zone.
7. Ensure mines, obstacles, and barriers within the zone are located and marked.
8. Ensure built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas are marked and bypassed.
9. Maintain security throughout reconnaissance.
10. Ensure enemy forces within the zone are reported.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-PAT-2403: Lead an LAV unit in an area reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an assigned area, an order with a mission to conduct an area reconnaissance and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Assess trafficability of all routes within the area.
3. Conduct evaluation of bridges within the area.

4. Locate river crossing sites near bridges within the area.
5. Evaluate overpasses, underpasses, and culverts within the area.
6. Ensure mines, obstacles, and barriers within the area are located and marked.
7. Ensure built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas are marked and bypassed.
8. Ensure forces and groups within the area are reported.
9. Maintain security throughout reconnaissance.
10. Report information to higher headquarters.
11. Complete area reconnaissance.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-TAC-2404: Lead LAV urban operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also applies to the 0369 (conduct a patrol, support an attack, checkpoint operations, scout employment).

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV platoon with attachments, an operations and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. The platoon commander, in coordination with the supported infantry unit leaders, conducts a physical or map reconnaissance, based on METT-TC, of the routes to be used.
2. Identify primary and supporting routes.
3. Identify approach routes to the built-up area.
4. Identify restrictive locations along the route that may provide ambush positions.
5. Identify dominating structures along the route.
6. Identify routes out of the built-up area.
7. Coordinate locations within the built-up area and along routes of movement for rally points.
8. Use covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.
9. Establish sectors of fire and direct fire responsibilities along the surface (ground, street, and water) level.
10. Continue operations as directed.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon

2. FM 90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas
3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Reference: 0302-MOUT-1105

0303-TAC-2405: Lead a LAV platoon in reconnaissance operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also applies to the 0369 (Route reconnaissance, Zone reconnaissance, Area reconnaissance).

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV platoon, attachments an operations order and the reference.

STANDARD: To report on the trafficability of any route for all classes of vehicles and personnel, the suitability of bridges, tunnels, fording sites, and any key or decisive terrain dominating the area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate with the unit directing the reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
2. Brief the unit on the mission.
3. Pass the SP at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
4. Assess the trafficability of routes to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
5. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route; trained infantry or engineers are essential to this step.
6. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route; determine whether the terrain is in the hands of the enemy.
7. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
8. Report on the disposition and composition of any enemy forces encountered; do not become engaged.
9. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0303-FSPT-2601: Supervise operation of a LAV-M Mortar Fire Direction Center (FDC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 4 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV-M FDC, an observed call for fire and the references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the higher commander's intent and essential fire support tasks.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Monitor the call for fire.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Supervise computations of corrections.
4. Monitor fire commands.
5. Supervise the maintenance of record for all fire missions.
6. Coordinate with the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) (as required).
7. Monitor the fire commands.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. FM 23-91 Mortar Gunnery
-

0303-PMCS-2701: Monitor Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given LAVs and appropriate technical manuals.

STANDARD: To ensure that discrepancies are noted and corrective action is taken per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Ensure PMCS is planned and properly supervised.
2. Determine status of equipment.
3. Ensure inoperable equipment requiring second echelon maintenance is annotated on the Vehicle Discrepancy Sheet (VDS).
4. Coordinate with the maintenance chief to open an Equipment Repair Order (ERO).

5. Ensure that Equipment Repair Order Shopping Lists (EROSLs) are completed and submitted (as required).
6. Reconcile the Daily Process Report (DPR) on all open EROs to remain apprised of status.

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08594B-12-2A LAV-25
2. LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
3. LI 08652-12A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Hull
4. LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
5. LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Turret
6. LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
7. LI 08652A-12A LAV-AT
8. LI 08654A-12A LAV-M
9. LI 08655B-12 Lubrication Instruction Light Armored Vehicle, Mortar, LAV-M
10. SL-3 08594A LAV-25
11. SL-3 08650A LAV C2
12. SL-3 08652A LAV-AT
13. SL-3 08654A LAV-L
14. SL-3 08655A LAV-M
15. SL-4 06697A Repair Parts List
16. TM 08650A-10A LAV-C2
17. TM 08652A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Turret
18. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
19. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT
20. TM 08652B-10/2A Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Automotive Hull
21. TM 08654B-10A LAV-L
22. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M

0303-VOPS-2702: Supervise vehicle inspection of LAV unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit, appropriate collateral equipment and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability and operational readiness.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect collateral material for accountability, serviceability, and cleanliness; ensure that all items are accounted for on inventory forms; ensure that all missing or unserviceable items are reflected on the DPR.

2. Inspect the LAV for serviceability and cleanliness; ensure that all systems are fully operational; ensure that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate vehicle's ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR; ensure that all required services have been conducted and noted in the vehicles records.
3. Inspect the weapon(s) for serviceability and cleanliness; ensure that the weapon(s) are fully operational; ensure that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR; ensure that all required services have been conducted and noted in the weapons' records.
4. Inspect the communication system for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets; ensure that any defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
5. Inspect the vehicle's optics for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets; ensure that any defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 2. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
 3. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
 4. TM 08652B-10/2A Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Automotive Hull
 5. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M
-

0303-WPNS-2801: Direct LAV platoon/section fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task also pertains to 0369 and 0313 NCO acting as a vehicle commander.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV platoon an operations order and references.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires on the targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish target priorities.
2. Assign target reference points.
3. Assign sectors of fires.
4. Assign engagement areas.
5. Assign phase lines.
6. Issue appropriate fire commands.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
 2. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
 3. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
-

0303-LOG-2901: Direct resupply of a unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a LAV-25 platoon with attachments, a tactical scenario and references.

STANDARD: To support the tactical sustainment of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish local security.
2. Establish method of resupply, tail gate or service station.
3. Establish priorities of resupply by unit, element and item supplied.
4. Conduct resupply operations without compromising local security or detection by the enemy.
5. Enforce all safety precautions.

REFERENCES :

1. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
2. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 0311, 0341, 0352 & 0369 (LAR SPECIFIC)

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE	9000	9-2
EVENT CODING.	9001	9-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.	9002	9-2
PREREQUISITES	9003	9-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	9004	9-3
INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL.	9005	9-3
2000-LEVEL 0311 LAV SCOUT INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	9006	9-6
2000-LEVEL 0341 LAV-M MORTARMAN INDIVIDUAL EVENTS	9007	9-21
2000-LEVEL 0352 LAV-AT ANITTANK MISSILEMAN INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	9008	9-26
2000-LEVEL 0369 LAV PLATOON SERGEANT INDIVIDUAL EVENTS. . . .	9009	9-36

LAR T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 9

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 0311, 0341, 0352 & 0369 (LAR SPECIFIC)

9000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 2000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as a Light Armored Vehicle (LAV) Scout, Mortarman or Antitank Missileman unique to the Light Armor Reconnaissance Battalion. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of MOJT, which are unique to the specific vehicle platform employed by the crew (i.e. LAV-25, LAV-M or LAV-AT).

9001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "0313" or "0303" indicating that the event is for LAV Crewmen or LAV Officer.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for LAV Crewmen/Officers are:

COMM - Communications	DEF - Defensive Operations
LOG - Logistics	NBC - Nuclear, Biological & Chemical
MOBL - Mobility	OFF - Offensive Operations
OPS - Operations	PAT - Patrolling
SMAW - MK153 SMAW	PMCS - Preventive Maintenance Checks & Services
SURV - Surveillance	WPNS - Weapons & Gunnery

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

9002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges. Many tasks directly align with a parent task published in the Infantry Training and Readiness Manual.

9003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine LAV Scout, Mortarman and Antitank Missileman will have completed their applicable MOS school at the School of Infantry, prior to assignment to an LAR Battalion.

9004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

BILLET: 0311 LAV Scout

Core Capabilities

1. Collects data for route classification.
2. Conducts road, bridge, tunnel, and ford reconnaissance.
3. Employs single channel communications assets to support tactical operations.
4. Conducts observation and surveillance techniques.
5. Employs the MK153 SMAW.

BILLET: 0341 LAV-M Mortarman

Core Capabilities

1. Employs single channel communications assets to support tactical operations.
2. Conducts preventive maintenance checks & services on LAV-M variant.
3. Employs the LAV-M variant in tactical operations.
4. Employs all organic weapons on the LAV-M.

BILLET: 0352 LAV_AT Antitank Missileman

Core Capabilities

1. Employs single channel communications assets to support tactical operations.
2. Conducts preventive maintenance checks & services on LAV-AT variant.
3. Employs the LAV-AT variant in tactical operations.
4. Employs all organic weapons on the LAV-AT

BILLET: 0369 Platoon Sergeant/Company Gunnery Sergeant, LAR Platoon. See Chapter 7, section 7004 for billet description and core capabilities. All 0369 tasks in this chapter are derived from comparable tasks in the Infantry Training & Readiness Manual with LAR unique conditions and standards added.

9005. INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
		2000 LEVEL 0311	
0311-PAT-2401		Collect data for classification of a route	9-6
0311-PAT-2402		Establish an LAV observation post (OP)	9-6
0311-PAT-2403		Conduct a road reconnaissance	9-7
0311-PAT-2404		Conduct a bridge reconnaissance	9-8
0311-PAT-2405		Conduct a tunnel reconnaissance	9-9
0311-PAT-2406		Conduct a ford reconnaissance	9-9
0311-PAT-2407		Direct dismount of an LAV-25	9-10
0311-COMM-2501		Employ field expedient/directional antennas	9-11
0311-COMM-2502		Operate an HF radio set	9-11
0311-COMM-2503		Operate communication security equipment for a VHF Radio set	9-12
0311-COMM-2504		Operate communication security equipment for an HF radio set	9-13
0311-COMM-2505		Operate a UHF radio set	9-13
0311-COMM-2506		Transmit a message using NATO format	9-14
0311-COMM-2507		Employ encryption/decryption/authentication sheets in communications	9-14
0311-SURV-2508		Photograph an objective	9-15
0311-SURV-2509		Prepare a panoramic sketch	9-16
0311-SURV-2510		Execute surveillance of an objective	9-16
0311-SMAW-2801		Maintain the MK153 SMAW	9-17
0311-SMAW-2802		Engage targets with the MK153 SMAW	9-18
0311-SMAW-2803		Engage targets with the MK153 SMAW using the AN/PVS-4	9-19
0311-SMAW-2804		Direct the employment of SMAW teams	9-20
		2000 LEVEL 0341	
0341-COMM-2501		Communicate using single channel radio set	9-21
0341-NBC-2601		Operate the LAV-M NBC equipment	9-21
0341-NBC-2602		Operate the LAV-M in an NBC environment	9-22
0341-PMCS-2701		Perform PMCS on the LAV-M weapon station	9-22
0341-PMCS-2702		Perform PMCS on the LAV hull	9-23
0341-PMCS-2703		Perform PMCS on the M257 smoke grenade launcher	9-23
0341-PMCS-2704		Maintain LAV-M SL-3 equipment	9-24
0341-WPNS-2801		Mount the mortar in the LAV-M	9-24
0341-WPNS-2802		Engage targets with the LAV-M	9-25
0341-WPNS-2803		Prepare mortar on the LAV-M for displacement	9-25
		2000 LEVEL 0352	
0352-COMM-2501		Communicate using a single channel radio	9-27
0352-NBC-2601		Operate the LAV-AT NBC equipment	9-27
0352-NBC-2602		Operate the LAV-AT in an NBC environment	9-28
0352-PMCS-2701		Maintain the LAV-AT Turret	9-28
0352-PMCS-2702		Perform PMCS on the LAV hull	9-29
0352-PMCS-2703		Perform PMCS on the M257 smoke grenade launcher	9-29
0352-PMCS-2704		Maintain the vehicle SL-3 equipment	9-30

0352-WPNS-2801		Install TOW components on an LAV-AT	9-30
0352-WPNS-2802		Operate LAV-AT turret	9-31
0352-WPNS-2803		Load a dual launcher with encased missiles	9-31
0352-WPNS-2804		Engage targets with the LAV-AT TOW launcher	9-32
0352-WPNS-2805		Assist in clearing a misfire or hangfire on the LAV-AT	9-33
0352-WPNS-2806		Load the M257 smoke grenade launcher	9-33
0352-WPNS-2807		Unload the M257 smoke grenade launcher	9-34
0352-WPNS-2808		Load the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	9-34
0352-WPNS-2809		Unload the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	9-35
0352-WPNS-2810		Engage targets with the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun	9-36
		2000 LEVEL 0369	
0369-MOBL-2101		Lead an LAV unit in a tactical road march	9-38
0369-OFF-2201		Employ the LAV-AT in support of offensive operations	9-38
0369-OFF-2202		Direct a moving LAV unit in a passage of lines	9-39
0369-OFF-2203		Lead an LAV unit in a movement to contact	9-39
0369-OFF-2204		Lead an LAV unit in a raid	9-40
0369-DEF-2301		Employ the LAV-AT in support of defensive operations	9-40
0369-DEF-2302		Conduct LAV assembly area activities	9-41
0369-DEF-2303		Establish LAV unit Battle Positions	9-42
0369-DEF-2304		Lead a stationary LAV unit in a passage of lines	9-42
0369-DEF-2305		Lead an LAV unit in a screening operation	9-43
0369-PAT-2401		Lead an LAV unit in a route reconnaissance	9-43
0369-PAT-2402		Lead an LAV unit in an area reconnaissance	9-44
0369-PAT-2403		Lead an LAV unit in a zone reconnaissance	9-45
0369-OPS-2601		Supervise operation of a LAV-M Mortar Fire Direction Center (FDC)	9-45
0369-PMCS-2701		Supervise Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the LAV	9-46
0369-WPNS-2801		Direct LAV unit fires	9-47
0369-LOG-2901		Direct LAV resupply operations	9-47

9006. 2000-LEVEL 0311 LAV SCOUT INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

0311-PAT-2401: Collect data for classification of a route

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As an LAV Scout assigned to reconnoiter a route, bridge or obstacle, and given a tape measure, paper, pencil, one assistant and references.

STANDARD: To provide vehicle commander or team leader with route information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Measure the width of a route in meters or feet.
2. Determine the ability of the route to withstand the effects of weather.
3. Determine the measurements and other data which determine the class of a bridge.
4. Identify any evidence of damage to a bridge from natural causes or combat action.
5. Identify and report obstructions.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
 3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
-

0311-PAT-2402: Establish an LAV observation post (OP)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As an LAV Scout, given an order to establish an observation post, a radio and references.

STANDARD: To provide timely reconnaissance information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a map reconnaissance of the tentative OP site.
2. Make preliminary plan.
3. Move team to objective area.

4. Establish final preparation position.
5. Conduct leader's reconnaissance of tentative OP.
6. Occupy OP.
7. Operate in the OP.
8. Report all information obtained.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)
 3. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
-

0311-PAT-2403: Conduct a road reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV Scout team, a map, compass, DA Form 1248 (Road Reconnaissance Report) or a field expedient substitute, enemy situation, and a mission to conduct a reconnaissance of a designated road.

STANDARD: To provide accurate route information.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a map reconnaissance of the area.
2. Issue an operation or fragmentary order.
3. Direct unit formations and movement.
4. Secure the final preparation position.
5. Conduct leader's reconnaissance.
6. Return to the team.
7. Direct actions at the objective area.
8. Determine limiting characteristics of the road.
9. Determine route widths and condition of shoulders.
10. Identify the road surface materials.
11. Determine the road length from the start to finish of that part of the road actually reconnoitered.
12. Identify obstructions and obstacles which restrict type, amount, or speed of traffic flow.
13. Identify any special weather conditions affecting the road, such as snow blockage or flooding.
14. Determine route type.
15. Determine the military route classification.
16. Prepare a road reconnaissance report.
17. Assemble the team at the objective rally point.
18. Disseminate the information.
19. Return to friendly lines.
20. Participate in debrief of team.
21. Provide full report.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
 3. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
 4. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
 5. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
 6. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)
-

0311-PAT-2404: Conduct a bridge reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a member of an LAV Scout Team, given the mission to conduct a bridge reconnaissance and references.

STANDARD: To provide accurate information on a designated bridge.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a map reconnaissance of the area.
2. Issue an operation or fragmentary order.
3. Direct unit formations and movement.
4. Secure the final preparation position.
5. Conduct a leader's reconnaissance.
6. Return to the team.
7. Direct actions at the objective area.
8. Determine the horizontal clearance.
9. Determine the under bridge clearance.
10. Determine the number, material, and type of span construction for each span.
11. Determine the length and conditions of individual spans.
12. Note any damaged spans as being either capable of supporting light vehicles, impassable to traffic but not totally destroyed, or being totally destroyed.
13. Measure the overall length of the bridge.
14. Measure the width of the roadway across the bridge.
15. Determine overhead clearance measured from the left shoulder, center of roadway, and right shoulder.
16. Determine the bridge bypass potential.
17. Determine the military load classification of the bridge using a bridge classification card.
18. Prepare a bridge reconnaissance report.
19. Assemble the team at the objective rally point.
20. Disseminate the information.
21. Return to friendly lines.
22. Participate in debrief of team.
23. Provide a full report.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
 3. GTA 5-7-8 Bridge Classification Card
 4. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
 5. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
 6. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
 7. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)
-

0311-PAT-2405: Conduct a tunnel reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a member of an LAV Scout Team, given the mission of conducting a tunnel reconnaissance and the references.

STANDARD: To provide accurate information on a designated tunnel.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the portal to portal length of the tunnel.
2. Determine the centerline distance of the tunnel.
3. Determine the effective width of the traveled way, curb to curb.
4. Determine the horizontal clearance.
5. Determine the overhead clearance.
6. Determine the rise of the tunnel arch.
7. Determine the radius of curvature of the traveled way, either measured or estimated.
8. Determine the gradient.
9. Determine the change in gradient within the tunnel.
10. Report data to team leader.
11. Participate in debrief of team.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. FM 5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
 3. MCRP 3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data
 4. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
-

0311-PAT-2406: Conduct a ford reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a member of an LAV Scout Team, given a mission to conduct a ford reconnaissance and the references.

STANDARD: To provide accurate information on a designated ford.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the sloping entrances and exits.
2. Determine maximum grade capabilities for ideal conditions.
3. Estimate the amount and type of work to improve the banks.
4. Determine the width of the stream bed from bank to bank.
5. Determine the actual width of the water, measured at normal stage, the high water mark, and the low water mark.
6. Determine the actual depth of the stream at normal water level.
7. Estimate maximum water depth based on local observations or records.
8. Estimate minimum water depth based on local observations or records.
9. Determine the slope of the approaches through which the approach roads are cut.
10. Identify the composition and the slope of the approaches after inclement weather and after the fording of vehicles has saturated the surface material.
11. Determine the composition of the stream bottom.
12. Estimate the effects of floods, excessive dry seasons, freezing, or other weather extremes.
13. Determine the velocity of the current and the presence of debris.
14. Report data to the team leader.
15. Participate in debrief of team.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
-

0311-PAT-2407: Direct dismount of an LAV-25

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV scout team, LAV-25, an order to deploy the scout-team for local security or the conduct of a mission and the reference.

STANDARD: To provide local security or commence conduct of an assigned mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish who is to dismount, with what weapons and equipment.
2. Designate who is to be the dismount team leader, as required.

3. Keep all members of the team informed, alerting them of possible dismount situations.
4. Give a dismount alert over the intercom system.
5. Notify the vehicle commander.
6. Give the order to dismount.
7. Direct the Marines into the best cover and concealment available.
8. Account for team members.
9. Orient the team to the ground and mission.

REFERENCE:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0311-COMM-2501: Employ field expedient/directional antennas

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tactical situation requiring a directional or an omni-directional antenna, an assembled radio, a receiving station on a radio net, frequency, call signs, a 1:50,000 military map, communication wire, knife, material for resistors and references.

STANDARD: To gain communication with the receiving station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine type of antenna required.
2. Determine antenna length.
3. Construct antenna.
4. Conduct operational check.
5. Troubleshoot problems.
6. Make radio check with another station.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Ground Radio
2. MCRP 6-22D Field Antenna Handbook

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 8541-COMM-2001 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-COMM-2502: Operate an HF radio set

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tactical situation, an HF radio set, all accessories, another station, frequencies, call signs and references.

STANDARD: To communicate with the receiving station within five minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assemble the radio set.
2. Conduct operation check.
3. Establish a communication check.
4. Troubleshoot problems.
5. Perform operator level maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Ground Radio
2. TM 07748A-12/1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-104

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 8541-COMM-2002 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-COMM-2503: Operate communication security equipment for a VHF Radio set

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a single channel radio, applicable comsec equipment, all accessories, frequencies, call signs, a receiving station and references

STANDARD: To transmit and receive secure traffic.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the equipment for secure voice operation.
2. Conduct a secure communications check.
3. Perform operator level preventive maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-40.3b Radio Operator's Handbook
2. TM 07748A-12/1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-104
3. TM 11-5810-256-OP-2 Operating Procedures for Communication Security Equipment

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assemble the radio set.
2. Conduct operation check.
3. Establish a communication check.
4. Troubleshoot problems.
5. Perform operator level maintenance.

REFERENCE:

1. TO 31R2-2 PRC-113-1- Operator's Manual, AN/PRC-113

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 8541-COMM-2004 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-COMM-2506: Transmit a message using NATO format

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a mission requiring submission of a NATO format report, a message pad, pencil or pen, the information required to submit the report, a tactical radio, receiving station and references.

STANDARD: To convey appropriate information in the appropriate NATO format.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Evaluate information.
2. Place information in the assigned lines of the NATO format.
3. Establish communications with the receiving station.
4. Transmit the message.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
2. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0311-COMM-1205 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-COMM-2507: Employ encryption/decryption/authentication sheets in communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tactical situation, an HF or VHF radio and accessories, a receiving station, a plain text message to be encrypted, an encrypted message to be decrypted, a CEOI, appropriate encryption/decryption material and reference.

STANDARD: To securely communicate by authenticating within one minute and performing encryption and decryption.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Authenticate a challenge upon entering a net.
2. Initiate a challenge to a new user on a net.
3. Encrypt and transmit a plain text message.
4. Decrypt an encrypted message received.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-40.3b Radio Operator's Handbook
2. MCRP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Ground Radio

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0321-COMM-1205 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-SURV-2508: Photograph an objective

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As an LAV Scout, given a mission, a camera, a photo log, a photo data sheet, and film, in a tactical environment and reference.

STANDARD: To provide an accurate image of the objective.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Select equipment for the mission.
2. Select the film required.
3. Prepare a photo log and photo data sheet.
4. Move to a point of observation with an unobstructed view.
5. Take several, carefully exposed, overlapping pictures.
6. Take panoramic views to provide a composite view of a large area.
7. Photo should contain a person or vehicle to serve as a scale.

8. Complete the data sheet and photo log.
9. Once photographs have been developed, annotate them if certain features need to be emphasized.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations (FMFM 2-2)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0321-SURV-1404 in the Reconnaissance T&R manual (MCO P3500.73) for additional guidance.

0311-SURV-2509: Prepare a panoramic sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a mission, paper, pencil, binoculars, night vision equipment, an objective, an observation post, protractor, in a tactical environment and the reference.

STANDARD: To provide a visual representation of the objective within 20 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify terrain features in objective area.
2. Count number of personnel in the objective area.
3. Determine scale to be used on the sketch.
4. Place a reference point on the sketch.
5. Draw features on the sketch.
6. Place marginal information on the sketch.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 8541-SURV-1001 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-SURV-2510: Execute surveillance of an objective

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a mission as an LAV Scout, an OP log, blank SPOTREP, binoculars, AN/PVS-4, AN/PVS-5, or AN/PVS-7, a 1:50,000 military map, a sketching kit, radio and message book, in a field environment and references.

STANDARD: To provide information on the objective without compromising position.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Select an observation post.
2. Maintain an OP log.
3. Employ observation techniques.
4. Construct a sketch of the objective.
5. Complete and send a SPOTREP to higher headquarters.
6. Provide a brief upon completion of mission.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
2. MCWP 3-15.3 Sniping
3. TM 11-5855-213-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Sight, Individual Served Weapon, AN/PVS-4
4. TM 11-5855-238-10 AN/PVS 5, 5A, 5B, and 5C

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 8541-SURV-1003 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-SMAW-2801: Maintain the MK153 SMAW

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: In a field environment, given a SMAW, appropriate cleaning material, operating as a gunner and references.

STANDARD: To ensure the weapon functions and is free of carbon, dirt, and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Check to ensure the weapon is in Condition 4.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect the weapon.
4. Clean the SMAW and the sights.
5. Reassemble the weapon.

6. Lubricate the weapon.
7. Check to ensure the weapon is in Condition 4.
8. Perform function check.
9. Disassemble the weapon.
10. Inspect the weapon.
11. Clean the SMAW and the sights.
12. Reassemble the weapon.
13. Lubricate the weapon.
14. Perform function check.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0
2. TM 08673A-25&P/2A Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0351-SMAW-1001 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-SMAW-2802: Engage targets with the MK153 SMAW

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario which presents a series of realistic threats at ranges 150 to 250 meters, a SMAW, wearing a fighting load, operating as a gunner, with an assistant gunner, during daylight and references.

STANDARD: To attain a hit from the kneeling position using one rocket.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Load the SMAW.
2. Select a firing position.
3. Acquire the target in the sight.
4. Determine range to target.
5. Set the estimated range on the sight range selector drum (telescopic sight).
6. Place the SMAW in Condition 1.
7. Fire a spotting round and observe impact.
8. Make necessary adjustments until spotting rounds impact target or until the six (6) spotting rounds are expended.
9. Fire the SMAW.
10. Take immediate action if misfire occurs with either spotting rifle or launcher.
11. Move to alternate/supplemental position.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0
2. TM 08673A-25&P/2A Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0351-SMAW-1003 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-SMAW-2803: Engage targets with the MK153 SMAW using the AN/PVS-4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a tactical scenario which presents a series of realistic threats at ranges 150 to 250 meters, a SMAW, wearing a fighting load and AN/PVS-4s, operating as a gunner, with an assistant gunner, during darkness and the references.

STANDARD: To attain a hit from the kneeling position using one rocket.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Remove the telescopic sight and mount the AN/PVS-4.
2. Load the SMAW.
3. Select a firing position.
4. Acquire the target in the sight.
5. Determine range to target.
6. Set the estimated range on the sight range selector drum.
7. Place the SMAW in Condition 1.
8. Make necessary adjustments until spotting rounds impact target or until the six spotting rounds are expended.
9. Assistant gunner ensures back blast area is secure.
10. Fire the SMAW.
11. Take immediate action if misfire occurs with either spotting rifle or launcher.
12. Move to alternate/supplemental position.
13. Remove the telescopic sight and mount the AN/PVS-4.
14. Load the SMAW.
15. Select a firing position.
16. Acquire the target in the sight.
17. Determine range to target.
18. Set the estimated range on the sight range selector drum.
19. Place the SMAW in Condition 1.
20. Make necessary adjustments until spotting rounds impact target or until the six spotting rounds are expended.
21. Assistant gunner ensures back blast area is secure.
22. Fire the SMAW.

23. Take immediate action if misfire occurs with either spotting rifle or launcher.
24. Move to alternate/supplemental position.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0
2. TM 08673A-25&P/2A Launcher, Assault Rocket 83MM (SMAW)
3. TM 11-5855-213-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Sight, Individual Served Weapon, AN/PVS-4

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0351-SMAW-1006 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

0311-SMAW-2804: Direct the employment of SMAW teams

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: LAV Scout

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given two or more SMAW teams attached to a unit, required equipment, an operation order, an area of operation and references.

STANDARD: To ensure they support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Recommend firing positions and methods of employment to the unit commander.
2. Supervise the occupation, preparation and camouflaging of firing positions in the areas designated by the unit commander.
3. Ensure that each team's fires are integrated with the fires of adjacent units.
4. Supervise the preparation of range cards.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 2-11 Anti-Mechanized Operations
2. IP 2-32 Anti-mechanized Weapons

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: See task 0351-SMAW-2103 in the Infantry T&R manual (NAVMC DIR 3500.87) for additional guidance.

9007. 2000-LEVEL 0341 LAV-M INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

0341-COMM-2501: Communicate using single channel radio set

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Mortarman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-M, a receiving station, call signs, frequencies and reference.

STANDARD: To effectively communicate with the receiving station.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the type of transmission required, plain or cipher.
2. Position the radio controls to their required positions.
3. Communicate with another station.

REFERENCE:

1. MCRP 6-22A Multiservice Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Ground Radio
-

0341-NBC-2601: Operate the LAV-M NBC equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Mortarman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-M, a M42 gas mask, CVC helmet and references.

STANDARD: To enable the vehicle and crew to continue operations in a simulated NBC environment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Don and clear the M42 gas mask.
2. Connect the M42 gas mask to the LAV intercom system.
3. Connect the M42 gas mask to the LAV NBC system.
4. Turn on the LAV NBC system.
5. Turn off the LAV NBC system.
6. Disconnect the M42 gas mask from the LAV intercom system.
7. Disconnect the M42 gas mask from the LAV NBC system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the launcher.
2. Clean the launcher tubes.
3. Inspect the launcher tubes.
4. Report any discrepancies to organizational maintenance personnel.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0341-PMCS-2704: Maintain LAV-M SL-3 equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Mortarman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-M, the appropriate SL-3 listing and references.

STANDARD: To ensure all equipment is accounted for and serviceable.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean the vehicle SL-3 equipment.
2. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment.
3. Inventory the vehicle SL-3 equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. SL-3 08594A LAV-25
 2. SL-3 08655A LAV-M
 3. TM 4700-15/1G Maintenance Record Procedures
-

0341-WPNS-2801: Mount the mortar in the LAV-M

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 1 month

BILLETS: Mortarman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-M with the mortar in the travel position and tie down strap in place, sight extension, direction stake placed 25 meters from the vehicle, with all hatches closed, an assistant gunner and references.

STANDARD: To ready the mortar to fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place the mortar in the fire position.

2. Lay the mortar on the directional stake.
3. Place sight extension on vehicle bipods.
4. Place sight on sight extension.
5. Align and level the mortar on the direction stake.
6. Announce gun up.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M
 2. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual
-

0341-WPNS-2802: Engage targets with the LAV-M

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Mortarman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-M with the mortar in the firing position and laid on a directional stake, ammunition, targets, a fire command, an assistant gunner and references.

STANDARD: To suppress or destroy designated targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Complete pre-fire checks.
2. Engage a target using direct lay.
3. Engage a target using indirect lay.
4. Perform misfire procedures, as needed.
5. Complete post-fire checks.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M
 2. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual
-

0341-WPNS-2803: Prepare mortar on the LAV-M for displacement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Mortarman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-M with the mortar mounted in the bipod support, laid on aiming stakes, an order to prepare to displace and references.

STANDARD: To enable continued operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Stow all equipment.
2. Place the mortar in the travel position.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M
2. TM 09922A-10/1 M252 81mm Mortar Operator's Manual

0352-NBC-2602: Operate the LAV-AT in an NBC environment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT with a larger unit, M42 protective mask, a simulated NBC environment and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish assigned mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the type of NBC threat presented.
2. Respond according to the type of threat encountered.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
 3. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
-

0352-PMCS-2701: Maintain the LAV-AT Turret

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT with an operational turret, cleaning gear, lubricants and references.

STANDARD: To ensure all parts of the turret are free of carbon, dirt and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the LAV-AT turret.
2. Inspect the LAV-AT turret, and turret FRH filter.
3. Clean the LAV-AT turret.
4. Lubricate the LAV-AT turret.

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
 2. LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
 3. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
 4. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT
-

0352-PMCS-2702: Perform PMCS on the LAV hull

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As part of a LAV-AT crew, given an LAV-AT, appropriate equipment, cleaning gear and technical manuals.

STANDARD: To identify and correct discrepancies and defects and report to organizational maintenance.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean the LAV hull.
2. Inspect the LAV hull.
3. Perform before PMCS on the LAV hull.
4. Perform during PMCS on the LAV hull.
5. Perform after PMCS on the LAV hull.
6. Perform weekly PMCS on the LAV hull.
7. Perform monthly PMCS on the LAV hull.
8. Lubricate the LAV hull.
9. Clean the intercommunication equipment in the LAV hull.

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
2. LI 08652-12A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Hull
3. LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Turret
4. LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
5. LI 08652A-12A LAV-AT
6. LI 08655B-12 Lubrication Instruction Light Armored Vehicle, Mortar, LAV-M
7. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
8. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
9. TM 08652A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT Turret
10. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
11. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT

0352-PMCS-2703: Perform PMCS on the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT, appropriate equipment, USMC approved cleaning material, and reference.

STANDARD: To ensure the launcher functions and is clear of dirt and rust.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clear the launcher.
2. Clean the launcher tubes.
3. Inspect the launcher tubes.
4. Report any discrepancies to organizational maintenance personnel.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
-

0352-PMCS-2704: Maintain the vehicle SL-3 equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT and the appropriate SL-3 listing.

STANDARD: To ensure all equipment is accounted for and serviceable.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean the vehicle SL-3 equipment.
2. Inspect the vehicle SL-3 equipment.
3. Inventory the vehicle SL-3 equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. SL-3 08594A LAV-25
 2. SL-3 08652A LAV-AT
 3. TM 4700-15/1G Maintenance Record Procedures
-

0352-WPNS-2801: Install TOW components on an LAV-AT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-AT with a launcher in the stowed position, a TOW with all components, encased missiles and reference.

STANDARD: To ensure that the equipment is secured and undamaged.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Stow the AN/TAS-4 batteries with case.
2. Stow the tripod.
3. Install the MGS into the LAV.
4. Connect the cable connector to join the MGS.
5. Install the emergency power battery in the LAV.
6. Stow the encase missiles.
7. Stow the launch tube.
8. Install the optical sight tracker.
9. Install the AN/TAS-4 thermal sight.
10. Stow the traversing unit.
11. Stow the collimator.
12. Stow the spare batteries.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
-

0352-WPNS-2802: Operate LAV-AT turret

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-AT with a launcher in the stowed position with turret power off and reference.

STANDARD: To demonstrate erecting and stowing the launcher in sequence and without damage to the equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Power up turret.
2. Operate the turret.
3. Stow the turret.
4. Power down the turret.
5. Conduct emergency power procedures, if required.
6. Conduct "low stow" procedures.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
-

0352-WPNS-2803: Load a dual launcher with encased missiles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-AT with a launcher erected, two encased missiles with engine running and references.

STANDARD: To ensure that there is no damage to the missile or the launcher, within one minute.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place the launcher in the load position.
2. Open the cargo hatch.
3. Load the missile.
4. Repeat procedures for the other missile to be loaded.
5. Close the cargo hatch.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
 2. TC 23-23 TOW Heavy Antitank Weapon System
 3. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
-

0352-WPNS-2804: Engage targets with the LAV-AT TOW launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a combat loaded LAV-AT with the launcher erected, all hatches closed, a target entering the sector of fire, a fire command and references.

STANDARD: To destroy designated target.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the LAV-AT launcher for firing.
2. Acquire targets.
3. Determine range to the targets.
4. Engage targets.
5. Perform immediate action for misfire, as needed.
6. Reload the LAV-AT dual launcher.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-34 TOW Weapon System
 2. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
 3. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT
-

0352-WPNS-2805: Assist in clearing a misfire or hangfire on the LAV-AT

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman, LAV-AT Section Leader

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: As a member of a LAV-AT crew, having experienced a misfire or hangfire on one of the missiles and references.

STANDARD: To return weapon to fire capable.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Press both triggers twice.
2. Announce "misfire" and continue tracking.
3. Select and arm additional missile, and manually disarm RAD if missile will not deselect.
4. Attempt to fire.
5. Check Select and Armed Indicator lights.
6. Check Fire Intrpt and Hatch Open lights.
7. Continue tracking.
8. Attempt to fire twice.
9. If missile fails to launch, disarm and deselect missile.
10. Continue to track.
11. Position vehicle and traverse turret, keeping launcher aimed at target area.
12. Remove the misfired missile.
13. Notify RSO then EOD.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-34 TOW Weapon System
 2. TM 08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Turret
 3. TM 9-1425-450-12 TOW Weapon System Guided Missile System
-

0352-WPNS-2806: Load the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT, L8A1/A3 smoke grenades, and the reference.

STANDARD: To provide the vehicle with smoke grenades.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn vehicle and turret power off.

2. Lock the turret.
3. Turn the grenade launcher switches off.
4. Insert grenades into the M257 grenade launcher.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8

0352-WPNS-2807: Unload the M257 smoke grenade launcher

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT, L8A1/A3 smoke grenades, and the reference.

STANDARD: To clear the grenade launcher.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn vehicle and turret power off.
2. Lock the turret.
3. Turn the grenade launcher switches off.
4. Remove grenades from the M257 grenade launcher.
5. Stow grenades.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	8

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17430 Impact Area Dudded

0352-WPNS-2808: Load the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT with an installed M240 variant pintle mounted machinegun, 200 rounds of ammunition, and the references.

STANDARD: To ready the weapon to fire in a time limit of 2 minutes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place the weapon on safe.
2. Clear the weapon.
3. Attach the ammunition can to the gun cradle.
4. Secure forward end of the ammunition belt to the feed tray.
5. Load the weapon.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	200

0352-WPNS-2809: Unload the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT with an installed M240 variant pintle-mounted machinegun loaded with 200 rounds of ammunition and the references.

STANDARD: To clear the weapon.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place the weapon on safe.
2. Remove the ammunition from the weapon.
3. Clear the weapon.
4. Remove the ammunition can from the gun cradle.
5. Stow ammunition.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

3. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
4. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A135 Cartridge, 7.62mm Dummy M63	200

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: There is a time limit for this task within the MCWP 3-14.1 under the LAV Gunnery Skills Test (LGST) section. The time limit covers multiple tasks that are grouped together in one LGST station. Therefore the time limit will not show up in the standards for this task but can be found in the reference.

0352-WPNS-2810: Engage targets with the M240 variant 7.62mm pintle-mounted machinegun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Antitank missileman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an LAV-AT with the M240 variant 7.62MM pintle-mounted machinegun installed and loaded with a belt of 7.62MM ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Announce "240".
2. Fire at targets using a short burst.
3. Fire and adjust 20 to 30 round bursts.
4. Announce "240 complete".

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A976 Cartridge, 25mm TP-T M793 Linked	111
A131 Cartridge, 7.62mm 4 Ball M80/1 Trace	550
A940 Cartridge, 25mm TPDS-T M910 Linked	108

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This is a LAV-25 vehicle commander task that will be performed to standard on tables 8, 9, 11 and 12.

9009. 2000-LEVEL 0369 LAV PLATOON SERGEANT INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

0369-MOBL-2101: Lead an LAV unit in a tactical road march

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an order with a mission to conduct an LAV road march and references.

STANDARD: To ensure that the unit arrives at the objective location at the time prescribed in the order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Organize and dispatch reconnaissance and quartering parties (as required).
3. Issue movement order.
4. Stage vehicles for movement.
5. Conduct movement.
6. Ensure vehicles move at the stated speed, time, interval and order.
7. Maintain security during movement and at security halts.
8. Gain and maintain communication with HHQ.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-OFF-2201: Employ the LAV-AT in support of offensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task applies to the LAV-AT section leader only.

BILLETS: LAV-AT Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-AT section, an order with a task to support offensive operations and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/detach units per higher headquarters order.

3. Position to support the attack.
4. Provide fires to support the assault.
5. Displace as required.
6. Consolidate and reorganize.
7. Prepare for counterattack and exploitation.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
 3. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
-

0369-OFF-2202: Direct a moving LAV unit in a passage of lines

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a moving LAV unit (reinforced), a stationary LAV unit, an order with a mission to conduct passage of lines through the stationary unit and references.

STANDARD: To conduct passage safely and quickly.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate with stationary unit, planning includes: passage point(s), time, fire support and shift of command.
2. Conduct link-up at contact points.
3. Collocate leaders.
4. Coordinate location of passage points and lanes.
5. Conduct passage.
6. Complete battle handover.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-OFF-2203: Lead an LAV Unit in a movement to contact

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an order with a mission to conduct a movement to contact and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain continuous security.
2. Gain and maintain contact with the enemy.
3. Report enemy activity.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-OFF-2204: Lead an LAV Unit in a raid

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit, an order with a mission to conduct an LAV raid and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish a restricted fire area (RFA) around the raid area.
2. Reconnoiter in the direction of the attack from the point of departure to the objective.
3. Establish visual contact with the enemy.
4. Establish a base of fire element.
5. Establish a maneuver element.
6. Suppress the enemy force with long range direct fires.
7. Establish surveillance on enemy avenues.
8. Attack the enemy.
9. Withdraw the maneuver element.
10. Return to friendly lines.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-DEF-2301: Employ the LAV-AT in support of defensive operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task applies to the LAV-AT section leader only.

BILLETS: LAV-AT Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given LAV-AT section, an order with a task to support defensive operations and references.

STANDARD: To support commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Attach/detach units per higher headquarters order.
3. Position to support the defense.
4. Provide fires to support the defense.
5. Prepare for counterattack or exploitation.

REFERENCES:

1. FMFM 6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
 2. MCWP 3-11.3 Scouting and Patrolling
 3. MCWP 3-15.5 MAGTF Antiarmor Operations
-

0369-DEF-2302: Conduct LAV assembly area activities

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an order with an implied or specified mission to conduct assembly area operations and references.

STANDARD: To accomplish the commander's intent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconnoiter the area.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Direct the establishment of security.
4. Clear the area.
5. Direct the improvement and the marking of entrances, exits, and internal routes.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-DEF-2303: Establish LAV unit Battle Positions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an order with a mission to establish battle positions and references.

STANDARD: To defend against the enemy's deliberate attack by employing supporting arms, obstacles and mines, and limited counterattacks as appropriate to disrupt his formations, interdict his supplies and reserves, and defeat his assault with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Assign primary vehicle positions.
3. Direct the assignment of sectors of fires.
4. Assign alternate/supplemental vehicle positions.
5. Establish route of withdrawal.
6. Coordinate supporting fires.
7. Coordinate with adjacent units.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-DEF-2304: Lead a stationary LAV unit in a passage of lines

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary LAV unit (reinforced), a moving LAV unit, an order with a mission to conduct passage of lines as the stationary unit and references.

STANDARD: To enable moving unit to conduct passage safely and quickly.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate with the moving unit, planning includes: passage point(s), time, fire support and shift of command.
2. Occupy contact points.
3. Collocate leaders.
4. Coordinate location of passage points and lanes.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Conduct reconnaissance of dominant terrain along the route.
3. Conduct reconnaissance of built-up areas along the route.
4. Conduct reconnaissance of lateral routes.
5. Conduct evaluation of bridges along the route.
6. Locate crossing sites near bridges along the route.
7. Conduct reconnaissance of overpasses, underpasses, and culverts along the route.
8. Conduct reconnaissance of defiles along the route.
9. Ensure mines, obstacles, and barriers along the route are located and marked.
10. Ensure built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas are marked and bypassed.
11. Ensure forces and groups that can influence movement along the route are reported.
12. Report route information.
13. Complete route reconnaissance.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon

0369-PAT-2402: Lead an LAV unit in an area reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), assigned area, order with a mission to conduct an area reconnaissance and references.

STANDARD: To obtain information on a designated area.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Assess trafficability of all routes within the area.
3. Conduct evaluation of bridges within the area.
4. Locate river crossing sites near bridges within the area.
5. Evaluate overpasses, underpasses, and culverts within the area.
6. Ensure mines, obstacles, and barriers within the area are located and marked.
7. Ensure built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas are marked and bypassed.
8. Ensure forces and groups within the area are reported.
9. Report information to higher headquarters.
10. Complete area reconnaissance.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-PAT-2403: Lead an LAV unit in a zone reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), assigned zone, order with a mission to conduct a zone reconnaissance and references.

STANDARD: To obtain information on a designated zone.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare for combat.
2. Direct the reconnaissance of terrain within the zone.
3. Determine the trafficability of all routes within the zone.
4. Direct the evaluation of bridges within the zone.
5. Ensure crossing sites near bridges in the zone are located.
6. Direct the evaluation of overpasses, underpasses, and culverts within the zone.
7. Ensure mines, obstacles, and barriers within the zone are located and marked.
8. Ensure built-up areas, obstacles, and contaminated areas are marked and bypassed.
9. Ensure enemy forces within the zone are reported.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
-

0369-OPS-2601: Supervise operation of a LAV-M Mortar Fire Direction Center (FDC)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

DESCRIPTION: This task applies to the LAV-M section leader only.

BILLETS: LAV-M Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a LAV-M FDC, an observed call for fire and references.

STANDARD: To support the commander's intent and scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Monitor the call for fire.
2. Determine suitability.
3. Supervise computations of corrections.
4. Monitor fire commands.
5. Supervise the maintenance of record for all fire missions.
6. Coordinate with the Fire Support Coordination Center (FSCC) (as required).
7. Monitor the fire commands.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 23-90 Mortars
 2. IP 2-32 Anti-mechanized Weapons
-

0369-PMCS-2701: Supervise Preventative Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on the LAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Gunny, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit and the appropriate technical manuals.

STANDARD: To ensure vehicles are clean, functional and that any discrepancies are noted and corrective action is taken.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct vehicle inspection.
2. Supervise that PMCS is properly performed.
3. Determine status of equipment.
4. Ensure inoperable equipment requiring second echelon maintenance is annotated on the Vehicle Discrepancy Sheet (VDS).
5. Coordinate with the maintenance chief to open an Equipment Repair Order (ERO).
6. Submit Equipment Repair Order Shopping Lists (EROSLs), as required.
7. Reconcile the Daily Process Report (DPR) on all open EROs to remain appraised of status.

REFERENCES:

1. LI 08594B-12-2A LAV-25
2. LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
3. LI 08652-12A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Hull
4. LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
5. LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Turret
6. LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Antitank LAV-AT
7. LI 08652A-12A LAV-AT

8. LI 08654A-12A LAV-M
 9. LI 08655B-12 Lubrication Instruction Light Armored Vehicle, Mortar, LAV-M
 10. TM 08594A-10/1B Operators Manual, LAV-25 Turret
 11. TM 08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual LAV-25 Hull
 12. TM 08650A-10A LAV-C2
 13. TM 08652B-10/2A LAV-AT
 14. TM 08654B-10A LAV-L
 15. TM 08655B-10A Operator's Manual LAV-M
-

0369-WPNS-2801: Direct LAV unit fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit (reinforced), an order to direct LAV fires from a defensive position and references.

STANDARD: To ensure fires are directed accurately and on time according to higher headquarters order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish target priorities.
2. Establish target reference points (TRPs).
3. Define engagement areas (EAs).
4. Identify phase lines.
5. Assign sectors of fires.
6. Issue appropriate fire commands.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
 2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 3. FM 6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire
-

0369-LOG-2901: Direct LAV resupply operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETTS: Company Gunny, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an LAV unit, a requirement to conduct a resupply operation and references.

STANDARD: To provide the unit with necessary supplies to continue operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine tactical resupply location.
2. Coordinate with support elements for resupply set up.
3. Supervise conduct of resupply.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 17-97 Cavalry Troop
2. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Combat Service Support

LAR T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX A

ACRONYMS AND ABBREVIATIONS

BDA	battle damage assessment
C2	command and control
C2W	command and control warfare
C4	command, control, communications, and computers
C4I	command, control, communications, computers, and intelligence
C4ISR	command, control, communications, computers, intelligence, surveillance and reconnaissance
CA	civil affairs
CAG	civil affairs group
CCIR	commander's critical information requirements
CE	command element
CI	counterintelligence
CJCS	Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff
CJCSI	Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff instruction
CJCSM	Chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff manual
CMO	civil-military operations
CNA	computer network attack
CND	computer network defense
CNE	computer network exploitation
CNO	computer network operations
COA	course of action
COG	centers of gravity
COMSEC	communications security
CONOPS	contingency operations
CP	counter-propaganda
DCID	Director of Center Intelligence Directive
DISA	Defense Information Systems Agency
DoD	Department of Defense
DoDD	Department of Defense directive
DoDI	Department of Defense instruction
EA	electronic attack
EMCON	Emissions Control
EMW	Expeditionary Maneuver Warfare
EP	electronic protection
ES	electronic support
EW	electronic warfare
EWCC	electronic warfare coordination cell
EWO	electronic warfare officer
FM	field manual (army)
FIWC	fleet information warfare center
G2	intelligence officer (major subordinate commands and larger organizations)
G3	operations officer (major subordinate commands and larger organizations)
HUMINT	human intelligence

LAR T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX B

TERMS AND DEFINITIONS

Terms in this glossary are subject to change as applicable orders and directives are revised. Terms established by Marine Corps orders or directives take precedence after definitions found in Joint Pub 1-02, DOD Dictionary of Military and Associated Terms.

A

After Action Review (AAR). A professional discussion of training events conducted after all training to promote learning among training participants. The formality and scope increase with the command level and size of the training evolution. For longer exercises, they should be planned for at predetermined times during an exercise. The results of the AAR shall be recorded on an after action report and forwarded to higher headquarters. The commander and higher headquarters use the results of an AAR to reallocate resources, reprioritize their training plan, and plan for future training.

C

Chaining. A process that enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate collective events and individual events that support a specific collective event. For example, collective training events at the 4000-level are directly supported by collective events at the 3000-level. Utilizing the building block approach to progressive training, these collective events are further supported by individual training events at the 1000 and 2000-levels. When a higher-level event by its nature requires the completion of lower level events, they are "chained"; Sustainment credit is given for all lower level events chained to a higher event.

D

Deception. Those measures designed to mislead the enemy by manipulation, distortion, or falsification of evidence to induce the enemy to react in a manner prejudicial to the enemy's interests. (JP 1-02)

E

E-Coded Event. An "E-Coded" event is a collective T&R event that is a noted indicator of capability or, a noted Collective skill that contributes to the unit's ability to perform the supported MET. As such, only "E-Coded" events are assigned a CRP value and used to calculate a unit's CRP.

I

Individual Readiness. The individual training readiness of each Marine is measured by the number of individual events required and completed for the rank or billet currently held.

M

Marine Corps Combat Readiness and Evaluation System (MCCRES). An evaluation system designed to provide commanders with a comprehensive set of mission performance standards from which training programs can be developed; and through which the efficiency and effectiveness of training can be evaluated. The Ground T&R Program will eventually replace MCCRES.

O

Operational Readiness (OR). (DoD or NATO) OR is the capability of a unit/formation, ship, weapon system, or equipment to perform the missions or functions for which it is organized or designed. May be used in a general sense or to express a level or degree of readiness.

P

Performance Step. Performance steps are included in the components of an Individual T&R Event. They are the major procedures (i.e., actions) a Marine unit must accomplish to perform an individual event to standard. They describe the procedure the task performer must take to perform the task under operational conditions and provide sufficient information for a task performer to perform the procedure (may necessitate identification of supporting steps, procedures, or actions in outline form). Performance steps follow a logical progression and should be followed sequentially, unless otherwise stated. Normally, performance steps are listed only for 1000-level individual events (those that are taught in the entry-level MOS school). Listing performance steps is optional if the steps are already specified in a published reference.

R

Readiness. (DoD) Readiness is the ability of U.S. military forces to fight and meet the demands of the national military strategy. Readiness is the synthesis of two distinct but interrelated levels: (a) Unit readiness--The ability to provide capabilities required by combatant commanders to execute assigned missions. This is derived from the ability of each unit to deliver the outputs for which it was designed. (b) Joint readiness--The combatant commander's ability to integrate and synchronize ready combat and support forces to execute assigned missions.

S

Section Skill Tasks. Section skills are those competencies directly related to unit functioning. They are group rather than individual in nature, and require participation by a section (S-1, S-2, S-3, etc).

T

Training Task. This describes a direct training activity that pertains to an individual Marine. A task is composed of 3 major components: a description of what is to be done, a condition, and a standard.

U

Unit CRP. Unit CRP is a percentage of the E-coded collective events that support the unit METL accomplished by the unit. Unit CRP is the average of all MET CRP.

W

Waived Event. An event that is waived by a commanding officer when in his or her judgment, previous experience or related performance satisfies the requirement of a particular event.

LAR T&R MANUAL

APPENDIX C

REFERENCES

FMs

2-11 Anti-Mechanized Operations

3-4 NBC Protection

3-5 NBC Decontamination

3-7 NBC Handbook

3-20.97 Reconnaissance Troop

3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon

3-21.11 SBCT Infantry Rifle Company

3-21.9 SBCT Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad

3-90.3 Mounted Brigade Combat Team

4-02.4 Medical Platoon Leader's Handbook Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures

5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification

5-250 Explosives and Demolitions

6-30 Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures for Observed Fire

7-7J Mechanized Infantry Platoon and Squad

17-97 Cavalry Troop

19-40 Enemy Prisoners of War/Civilian Internees

21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation

23-34 TOW Weapon System

23-90 Mortars

23-91 Mortar Gunnery

34-130 Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield

90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built-Up Areas

FMFM

5-36 Route Reconnaissance and Classification
6-4 Marine Rifle Company/Platoon
6-5 Marine Rifle Squad
6-30 Employment of the Light Armored Infantry Battalion
7-32 Raid Operations
13-7 MAGTF Breaching Operations

FMFRP

4-19 Vehicle Recovery Operations

Lubrication Instruction

LI 08594B-12-2A LAV-25
LI 08594B-12/1B Lubrication Instruction, LAV-25 Turret
LI 08652-12A Operator's Manual LAV-AT Hull
LI 08652A-12-1 Lubrication Instruction, Turret Light Armored Vehicle Anti-tank LAV-AT
LI 08652A-12-1A Operator's Manual for LAV-AT Hull
LI 08652A-12-2 Lubrication Instruction, Light Armored Vehicle Anti-tank LAV-AT
LI 08652A-12A LAV-AT
LI 08654A-12A LAV-M
LI 08655B-12 Lubrication Instruction Light Armored Vehicle, Mortar, LAV-M

Miscellaneous

GTA 5-7-8 Bridge Classification Card
IP 2-32 Anti-mechanized Weapons
NTSC P-5601
SL-3 08594A LAV-25
SL-3 08650A LAV-C2
SL-3 08652A LAV-AT
SL-3 08654A LAV-L

SL-3 08655A LAV-M

SL-4 06697A Repair Parts List

TO 31R2-2PRC-113-1 Operator's Manual, AN/PRC-113

Marine Corps Reference Publications (MCRPs)

3-02g First Aid

3-16.6 Multi-service Procedures for the Joint Application of Firepower
(J-Fires)

3-17A/FM 5-34 Engineer Field Data

3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports

3-40.3B Radio Operator's Handbook

4-11.8C Enemy Prisoners of War and Civilian Internees

4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations

5-12.1A The Law of Land Warfare

6-22A Multi-service Communications Procedures for the Single-Channel Ground
Radio

6-22D Field Antenna Handbook

Marine Corps Warfighting Publications (MCWPs)

2-1 Intelligence Dissemination

2-2 MAGTF Intelligence Collections

2-15.3 Ground Reconnaissance Operations

3-11.2 Marine Rifle Squad

3-14.1 Light Armored Vehicle-25 Gunnery and Employment

3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

3-15.3 Scout Sniping

3-15.5 MAGTF Anti-armor Operations

3-16 Fire Support Coordination in the Ground Combat Element

3-16.6 Supporting Arms Observer, Spotting and Controlling

3-17 Engineer Operations

3-17.1 River- Crossing Operations
3-23.1 Close Air Support
3-25 Control of Aircraft and Missiles
3-25.10 Low Altitude Air Defense Handbook
3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
3-33.1 Marine Air-Ground Task Force Civil-Military Operations
3-33.2 Civil Affairs
3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
3-37 MAGTF CBRN Defense Operations
3-37.2 NBC Protection
4-1 Logistics Operations
4-11 Combat Service Support
5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6-22 Communications and Information Systems

NAVMCs

3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

TMs

00517A/09922A-23& Unit and Intermediate Direct Support Maintenance Manual for
107mm Mortar Turntable and Mount 81mm Turntable and Mount
81mm Mortar Bipod Assembly
07748A-12/1 Operator's Manual AN/PRC-104
08594A-10/1B Operator's Manual, LAV-25 Turret
08594B-10/2B Operator's Manual, LAV-25 Hull
08611A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, 5.56mm, M249
08650A-10A LAV-C2
08652A-10/1 Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Anti-tank LAV-AT Turret
08652A-10/1A Operator's Manual, LAV-AT Turret
08652B-10/2A LAV-AT

08652B-10/2A Operator's Manual, Light Armored Vehicle Anti-tank LAV-AT
Automotive Hull

08654B-10A LAV-L

08655B-10A Operator's Manual, LAV-M

08670A/09712A-12A-10/1B Operator's Manual for Machinegun, 7.62mm, M240

08673A-10/1 Launcher, Assault Rocket 83mm (SMAW) MK 153 MOD 0

08673A-25&P/2A Launcher, Assault Rocket 83mm (SMAW)

10582A10-1 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer
(LAV-FIST)

10582A10-2 Light Armored Vehicle Full Crew Interactive Simulation Trainer
(LAV-FIST)

11-5810-256-OP-2 Operating Procedures for Communication Security Equipment

11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio

11-5855-213-10 Operator's Manual, Night Vision Sight, Individual Served
Weapon, AN/TVS-5

11-5855-238-10 AN/PVS 5,5A,5B, and 5C

3-4240-300-10-2 Chemical, Biological Mask, Combat Vehicle, M42

4700-15/1G Maintenance Record Procedures

9-1375-213-12 Demolition Materials

9-6920-710-12&P-2 Operator Unit Maintenance Manual including repair parts and
special tools list for the precision gunnery system for the
LAV-25

9-6920-711-12&P-1 Operator Unit Maintenance Manual including repair parts &
special tools list for the control gun and data retrieval
system